# TARBELL'S
# LESSONS IN LANGUAGE
## BOOK II.
GINN AND CO

# TARBELL'S

# LESSONS IN LANGUAGE

BY

HORACE S. TARBELL, A.M.

SUPERINTENDENT PUBLIC SCHOOLS, PROVIDENCE, R.I.

SECOND BOOK

BOSTON, U.S.A.

PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY

1892

Copyright, 1891,
By H. S. TARBELL.

All Rights Reserved.

Typography by J. S. Cushing & Co., Boston, U.S.A.

Presswork by Ginn & Co., Boston, U.S.A.

# PREFACE.

This book has been prepared for the use of pupils of the higher grammar grades.

It contains a treatment of two main subjects: Grammar, or the science of the sentence; and the elements of Composition, or the art of writing.

In the part which treats of Grammar are included analysis and punctuation; in that which treats of Composition are included the conventional forms of epistolary, social, business, and parliamentary writing; and practice in the art of writing, for which abundant material is supplied by exercises in the selection and arrangement of words, in description, narration, reproduction, paraphrase, and essay-writing.

These subjects are arranged, as in the first book, in the order in which the pupil can best study them, and not in the deductive order in which an adult might find most pleasure.

To spend some years upon composition, often called language study, and then other years upon technical grammar, ignoring their connection and mutual helpfulness, does not produce the best culture nor prove an economical use of time.

It is only when week by week of his school life the pupil is learning and applying, having constantly in hand something to study and something to write, that his mental needs are best met, and his progress best secured.

That the pupil should pass from the easy to the difficult has been considered of greater importance than that cognate subtopics should be considered in connection.

The *pupil* has been considered first, what he needs, what he can do, what he will enjoy; next the *teacher*, his convenience, the lightening of his work, the furnishing of all that he will need for the work of his class; and lastly, the *subject*, that it be treated clearly, definitely, and with reasonable fulness.

The plan of this book, the continuity and relation of its several parts may be learned more fully by consulting the Directions to Teachers.

A book which provides for the synchronous study of several subjects must be arranged with lessons in close succession upon different lines of work, or the lessons must be selected, now here, now there, throughout the book. This may be done in reviews, but is perplexing in advance work.

Though prepared to follow Book I., this book is still sufficiently complete in itself to be a one-text-book course, covering the pupil's entire range of language work below the secondary school.

A personal word here may be pardoned. Amid the engrossing duties of my position I could not have found time to prepare this series had I not been constantly aided by my daughter, Martha Tarbell, whose thought and labor appear on every page.

To Joseph C. Jones, Superintendent of the Schools of Newton, Mass., I make acknowledgment of many helpful suggestions during the preparation of the work.

# NOTES TO TEACHERS.

The lessons of this book should be studied in the order in which they occur; but reviews should be conducted by subjects, that the logical relation of the parts of each subject may be perceived and comprehended. Some of these subjects should be kept in constant review, while others need not be reviewed at all.

The lessons in grammar are 1, 2, 6, 7, 10, 12, 13, 15, 18, 21, 23, 27, 31, 35, 40, 43, 47, 49, 54, 58, 63, 65, 67, 71, 72, 75, 81, 85, 89, 94, 98, 101, 105, 108, 112, 118, 121, 125, 129, 131, 135, 138, 142, 149, 152, 154, 160, 166, 172, 176, 179, 181, 184, 187, 190, 193, 196, 198, 202, 206, 209, 212, 218, 225, 230, 234, 237, 240, 245, 248, 253, 259, 262, 267, 276, 288, 294, 297, 300, 304, 308, 313, 318, 321, 332, 335, 338, 340.

For lessons in rhetoric, punctuation, and other subjects, see Index. These references will be useful in reviews and examinations.

An abundance of work in composition has been provided. It is expected that the teacher will use this material as the needs of the class require. Some of the topics for compositions may be treated orally and others in writing; some may be assigned to one part of the class and others to another part; some may be deferred to a review and others may be omitted altogether.

The usual marks of correction are given on page 29, and pupils should be trained to use them from the first in the correction of papers. If it be desired merely to indicate errors without making corrections, *S* may be used in the margin to indicate an error in spelling, *G* in grammar, *P* in punctuation or capitals, and *R* in rhetoric or style.

A teacher should not undertake to correct every paper that his pupils write. If he does, his burden of work becomes too heavy to be borne, or the pupils have much less practice in writing than they need.

The more common faults should be corrected, one at a time, by having two or three papers containing the error in question, and other papers quite free from it, copied upon the board and criticised by the class. Pupils should then correct their own papers and afterwards exchange them for mutual criticism.

Show the best work rather than the poor work. When work is put upon the board for correction, only so much should be written as is necessary to exhibit the error, and it should be speedily erased. When good work is put before the pupils for commendation, show as much as is convenient, and let it remain as a model.

In the beginning of the work criticisms should be limited mainly to arrangement, misspelled words, and violations of the fundamental rules of punctuation and capitalization.

Do not discourage by criticism. The pupil's standard of good work should not be raised so high as to seem unattainable, but should rise as he advances.

Pupils should be trained to write freely and rapidly, with no undue anxiety about correctness, and then to revise with thought and painstaking. After mere correctness has been attained, encourage pupils to aspire to something better than freedom from special faults.

The directions in the lessons entitled "Cautions" should be carefully read and the explanations studied. Merely to recite these lessons and then to pass on to other work will be of little value. They should be referred to again and again as the errors they warn against appear in the pupil's speech or composition.

The reading books, geographies, histories, and physiologies of the pupils afford many admirable themes for compositions, and so does the work of the class on "Current Events." Whenever themes from other studies or sources are found to be especially adapted to the interest or the instruction of the class, they should be taken in preference to those assigned in this book.

If more work is desired in analysis and parsing than is given, the exercises for rhetorical practice can be used for this purpose.

# LESSONS IN LANGUAGE.

## Lesson 1.

### THE SENTENCE.

School begins.
Pupils study.
Industry prospers.
Kindness charms.

Here are four groups or combinations of words, each of which expresses a thought.

**A combination of words that expresses a thought is called a sentence.**

Some of the combinations of words below express thoughts, and are sentences; some do not express thoughts, and, hence, are not sentences. Select the sentences.

Birds fly.
Water flows.
The rain falls.
The fall rain.
Sugar is sweet.
The spring has come.
All along the highway.
Squirrels eat nuts.

Every sentence has two parts: one, the word or words which tell what is spoken of; the other, the word or words which tell something about that which is spoken of.

**The part of the sentence which tells what is spoken of, is called the subject of the sentence.**

**The part of the sentence which tells something about that which is spoken of, is called the predicate of the sentence.**

Select the subjects and the predicates of the sentences which you have studied in this lesson, and also of the following sentences: —

Leap-year comes every fourth year.
The squirrel has his nest in the hollow of a tree.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Mary is here. | You can do it. | He thought so. |
| Is Mary here? | Can you do it? | Did he think so? |

## Lesson 2.

### KINDS OF SENTENCES.

The earth is round. Virtue is its own reward.
The sky is blue. Columbus discovered America in 1492.

These sentences are statements.

Does it rain? Will you come to-morrow?
How far does this lesson extend?

These sentences are questions.

Keep still. Go to the blackboard.
Come to me. Study your lessons.

These sentences are commands or requests.

How it pours! What a bright flash that was!
How dreadful that accident was!

These sentences are exclamations.

Sentences may be statements, questions, commands or requests, or exclamations.

**A sentence that is a statement is called a declarative sentence.**

**A sentence that is a question is called an interrogative sentence.**

**A sentence that expresses a command, a wish, or a request, is called an imperative sentence.**

**A sentence that strongly expresses surprise, joy, grief, or other feeling, is called an exclamatory sentence.**

What kind of sentence is each of the following?

Gibraltar commands the entrance to the Mediterranean Sea.
Where is Yokohama?
Oh, there is sweetness in the morning air!
Interest is an allowance made for the use of money.
We take no thought of time but from its loss.
Think before you speak.
What do you mean?
How gladly would we buy time!
We lessen our wants by lessening our desires.

## Lesson 3.

### MARGINS. — THE PARAGRAPH.

The spaces on a page, above, below, and on each side of the writing or printing are called margins.

A paragraph consists of one or more sentences relating to the same thing, and forming a division of a writing.

The beginning of a paragraph is usually indicated by commencing the first sentence on a new line and farther to the right than the other lines.

Turn to your reading book and find the first paragraph of your reading lesson, the second paragraph, other paragraphs. Tell what each paragraph is about.

Look at the first lesson in this book. What is the first

paragraph in that lesson? What is the paragraph about? What is the second paragraph? How many paragraphs are there in the lesson?

## Lesson 4.

### PUNCTUATION.

[In the directions given in this book, the correct use of capitals, as well as of marks of punctuation, will be included in the terms *punctuation* and *punctuate*.]

The four most important rules of punctuation are: —

1. *The first word of every sentence should begin with a capital letter.*
2. *Every declarative or imperative sentence should be followed by a period.*
3. *Every interrogative sentence should be followed by an interrogation point.*
4. *Every exclamatory sentence should be followed by an exclamation point.*

Every figure, letter, word, or group of words, which stands for an entire sentence should be followed by the mark of punctuation which would follow the complete sentence.

At the head of this lesson you see the words "Lesson 4," "Punctuation." "Lesson 4" stands for the sentence, "This is lesson 4," and is therefore followed by a period. "Punctuation" stands for the sentence, "The subject of this lesson is punctuation," and is therefore followed by a period.

The figures, 1, 2, 3, and 4, used to number the rules at the beginning of this lesson stand for the sentences, "This

is rule 1," "This is rule 2," etc., and are therefore followed by periods.

Hence, the figures that stand for the number of a line, an example, or exercise should be followed by periods. It is not the custom, however, to put the period after the number of a page.

Observe the use of the dash in the following exercise.

Explain the use of the other marks of punctuation.

THE TWO FRIENDS.

1. — GEORGE. Will you go?
2. — CHARLES. Yes.
3. — GEORGE. When?
4. — CHARLES. Now.
5. — GEORGE. Good!
6. — CHARLES. Can Thomas go?
7. — GEORGE. No.
8. — CHARLES. Not go? That's too bad.

— ANONYMOUS.

## Lesson 5.

### DEFINITION. — DESCRIPTION.

A *definition* is the explanation of the meaning of a word or term.

Here are examples of definition from Webster's Dictionary.

A biped is an animal having two feet.
A quadruped is an animal having four feet.
A ruminant is an animal that chews the cud.

In these definitions it is stated that bipeds, quadrupeds, and ruminants are all animals; and in each case is given that which distinguishes this kind of animals from other kinds.

Each definition is in two parts; the first part states the class of things to which the object belongs, the second part states the differences between this object and other objects of the same class.

We may take this to be the general rule for making a definition: state first the class to which the object belongs, and tell next what peculiarities distinguish this object from other objects of the same class. Let us apply this rule.

What is an iceberg?

An iceberg is an immense mass of ice which has broken from the polar ice-fields, and has floated out into the ocean. It is sometimes laden with rock and stones, taken from the coast where it was formed.

The first sentence of the answer above is a definition. The second sentence adds an interesting fact.

The two sentences form a description of an iceberg.

A description is something more than a definition.

Using the description of the iceberg as a model, answer these questions: —

What is a lake?
What is a bay?
What is a volcano?
What is a tree?
What is iron?
What is coal?

## Lesson 6.

### THE NOUN.

Everything about which we can think has a name. This name is the word which we use when we speak to others about it.

Fill the blanks in these sentences with names: —

The names of five boys are ——.
The names of five rivers are ——.
The names of five cities are ——.
The names of five things in this room are ——.
—— can be seen in the garden.
—— can be heard on a spring morning.
—— are what we like to see in our friends.
—— make us despise a man.
—— are used in building a house.
—— are pleasant things to do.
—— are the parts of the head.

**A word used as a name is called a noun.**

Some of the nouns which you have used are names of things. Which are they? Some are names of actions. Which are they? Some are names of qualities. Which are they? Some are names of materials. Which are they?

## Lesson 7.

### CLASSES OF NOUNS.

The name *man* can be applied to any man; the name *horse* to any horse; the name *ocean* to any ocean.

**A name that may be applied to any one of a class of persons or things is called a common noun.**

*Thursday* is the name of one of the days of the week, by which we distinguish this day from the other days of

the week. *George Washington*, *Arthur*, *Mary*, *Mrs. Brown*, *Peter the Great*, are names by which certain persons are distinguished from other persons. *Atlantic* is the name of an ocean. *Regulus* is the name of a star.

**A name by which some particular one of a class is known from others of the same class is called a proper noun.**

*A proper noun should always begin with a capital letter.*

[*Maple* is the name of a kind of trees and distinguishes this kind of trees from other kinds, but it does not name any one tree and distinguish it from every other tree of the same kind. It is, therefore, a common and not a proper noun.]

Write ten common nouns, and after each write two proper nouns belonging to the class which the common noun denotes; as, —

Ocean - - Atlantic, Pacific.
City - - Atlanta, Camden.

## Lesson 8.

### LETTERS.

CANTON, N. Y.,
*May* 1, 1891.

MY DEAR OSCAR,

This is May Day, and we have had no school. As I do not have my lessons to learn this evening, I can write and tell you how I have spent part of my holiday.

I wish you had been with me this morning, for I had a jolly time. I took my dog Dash to Long Pond to give him a swim.

We went through the woods first, and spent a long time in watching the birds and squirrels in the trees. Then we crossed the meadow and passed by that old apple-tree where you found the robin's nest last summer.

When we reached the pond, I threw a stick far out and tried to teach Dash to swim in and bring it back to me, but it was hard work to get him to do it. He would swim out to the stick, smell of it, and then swim back without it. I threw stones at the stick, and finally put a stick in his mouth before throwing it out. At last he seized the stick and swam back with it. He seemed quite proud of having learned his lesson. Every time I threw a stick in after that, he would fetch it to me.

I gave Dash a long race over the fields to dry him, and then we came home by the river-side.

Now this is a long letter, and I shall look for a long one from you soon.

Your cousin,

TOM HASKELL.

From this letter you may infer that every letter should consist of the following parts: —

I. The Heading. { 1. Place where written. 2. Date when written.

II. Salutation, or words of greeting.

III. The Body of the letter.

IV. The Conclusion. { 1. Complimentary close. 2. Signature of writer.

Upon the envelope in which the letter is enclosed should be written the superscription, containing: —

1. The name of the person to whom the letter is sent.
2. The name of the place to which it is sent.

No. 2 includes the place of residence or place of business,

and the town or city, and state. It may include the post-office box, and should include the county, if the town is not well known.

When anything of importance has been omitted from the body of a letter, it may be written below the signature. The letters *P.S.*, standing for the word *Postscript*, should precede what is thus added. Postscripts should be avoided, for they indicate that the letter has been hastily or carelessly written.

Every line in the heading, salutation, conclusion, and superscription, and the first line of the body of the letter, should begin with a capital. Every noun in the heading and in the salutation should begin with a capital.

The date, signature, and superscription should each be followed by a period.

The several parts of the heading should be separated by commas; and the salutation and every line, except the last, in the conclusion and in the superscription of a letter, should be followed by a comma.

Every word in the salutation and the complimentary close should be spelled in full.

The salutation may be followed by a comma, a comma and a dash, a colon, or a colon and a dash. The comma is used in the most familiar salutations, and the colon and dash in the most formal.

Many writers prefer to omit all marks of punctuation in the superscription except the period.

Observe carefully the position and punctuation of each part of the letter given in this lesson. Copy each of the principal parts by itself, and tell which part of the heading is the name of the place and which part is the date; what is the salutation, etc.

## Lesson 9.

### DESCRIPTION.

Following the model on page 6 answer these questions: —

What is leather? What is a mirror? What is hail?

## Lesson 10.

### PRONOUNS.

When we speak of ourselves we usually say *I*, *my*, *mine*, or *me* for one person; and *we*, *our*, *ours*, or *us* for more than one person. Instead of the name of the person to whom we are speaking we may use the word *you* or *your*, and instead of the names of other persons or things we may use *he*, *his*, *him*, *she*, *hers*, *her*, *it*, *its*, *they*, *their*, *theirs*, or *them*. These words are used in the place of the names of the persons or things which they represent. They are used in the place of nouns.

**Words used in the place of nouns are called pronouns.**

**The noun for which the pronoun stands is called the antecedent of the pronoun.**

In the sentence "A brave man overcomes his fear," the antecedent of *his* is *man*.

Select each pronoun below, and tell its antecedent: —

A swallow, observing a farmer sowing his field with flax, called together all the birds she could find, and requested them to assemble early in the morning and aid her in picking up the seed and destroying it. She informed them that nets are made from flax, and that if they allowed it to spring up and grow, many of them would surely be taken by its means.

## Lesson 11.

### DESCRIPTION.

See model on page 6.

What is a microscope? What is paper?
What is silk? What are Birds of Passage?

## Lesson 12.

### VERBS.

What does a bird do? What does a child do?
What does a fire do? What does the wind do?

Words which tell what anything does are called verbs.

What verbs did you use in your answers to the questions at the head of this lesson?

The italicized words in the following sentences are verbs: —

Wasps *sting.* Squirrels *live* in trees.
Clouds *move.* Waste *makes* want.
Waves *roll.* Diamonds *cut* diamonds.
The sailor *rows* the boat. Laziness *hinders* progress.

Verbs may also be used to tell what is done to any person or thing, to ask a question, or to give a command; as,—

He *was stung* by a wasp. *Did* he *catch* it? *Come* to me.

**Words which assert something of a person or thing are called verbs.** (The word *assert* must be taken as including in its meaning *tell, ask,* and *command.*)

A verb often consists of two, three, or four words, and may then be called a verb phrase; as, —

School *has begun.* School *will have begun.*

School *will have been begun.*

Find as many verbs in Lesson 1 as you can.

## Lesson 13.

### SUBJECT, PREDICATE, MODIFIERS.

A sentence can be made by the union of a noun and a verb; thus, Grass grows, Dew sparkles, Carrie studies. In these sentences the noun is the subject, and the verb is the predicate.

The subject and the predicate of a sentence may have words joined to them to limit, to change, or to make more complete their meaning.

**Words joined to other words to make their meaning or use more definite are called modifiers.**

The sun shines.

The bright sun shines in the sky.

In the second sentence *bright* is a modifier of *sun*, and *in the sky* is a modifier of *shines*.

**A subject or a predicate without modifiers is called a simple subject or a simple predicate.**

**A simple subject with its modifiers may be called a modified subject, and a simple predicate with its modifiers may be called a modified predicate.**

Hereafter, when the words *subject* and *predicate* are used alone, the simple subject and the simple predicate are understood.

Study these sentences, and tell what is the subject, what is the predicate, and what are the modifiers of each.

Time flies.
War-ships are built of iron.
So work the honey-bees.
The cattle graze upon the hills.
They go to church on Sunday.
The Greeks fled toward the city.
The fields are covered with grain.

## Lesson 14.

### LETTER FORMS.

Box 1007, Helena, Montana,
*May* 11, 1895.

Messrs. Rand, Dobson & Co.,
64 Wilmington Ave.,
Syracuse, N.Y.

Gentlemen: — Will you .....
.....

Very respectfully,
[Mrs.] J. M. Sabine.

In business letters the *address* is written above the *salutation*, and the two together form the *introduction*. In social or friendly letters the address may be omitted, as on page 8, or written at the left below the signature.

From the following statements write suitable headings, introductions, and conclusions for letters, arranging them as in the model above: —

Be careful in the use of titles. Do not use both Mr. and Esq., nor Dr. and M.D. with the same name.

Arthur Benedict, who resides in Colchester, Connecticut, and whose post-office box is No. 35, wrote a letter to J. L.

Montmorris, a doctor living at Los Angeles, California, on the 12th day of June, 1865.

Jan. 9, 1887, Frank Wilcox of New York City, 18 State St., wrote to Porter & Hoyt, whose place of business is on Beekman St. of the same city.

A letter was written on June 7, '84, to Walter Torr of Crawfordsville, Indiana, by his uncle, Joseph Powell of Cincinnati, Ohio, who wrote from 100 West Fourth St.

Eleanor Moore wrote to her friend, Lillian M. Rose, on Feb. 4 of the year 1886. The letter was sent to Dallas, Texas, and was written from Tokio, Japan.

Grace W. Emery received a letter which was written in 1890, in January, on the fifth day of the month. Her address was Seattle, Washington. The letter was written at the De Pauw University, Greencastle, Indiana, by E. L. Adams, her former teacher.

Kate R. Krider wrote to the firm of Shepard, Sheridan & Co., on the twenty-first day of July. The letter was written from Lansing, Michigan, and she wished the reply to be sent to post-office box No. 133. The address of the firm was 115 La Salle St., Chicago, Ill.

## Lesson 15.

### THE ADJECTIVE.

Good men, five men, red apples, industrious boys, this lesson.

With the nouns *men*, *apples*, *boys*, and *lesson* we have joined other words which modify them.

**A word which modifies a noun or pronoun is called an adjective.**

The adjectives *good*, *red*, and *industrious describe* the

objects which the nouns *men*, *apples*, and *boys* represent, and hence are called *descriptive* adjectives.

The adjective *five* limits the application of the noun *men* to a certain number; the adjective *this* limits the noun *lesson* to one particular lesson; and hence they are called *limiting* adjectives.

**An adjective used to describe an object is called a descriptive adjective.**

**An adjective used to limit the use of a noun or pronoun is called a limiting adjective.**

In the sentence "This old man is lame," name the adjectives, and tell whether each is limiting or descriptive.

Select five limiting and five descriptive adjectives from your reading lesson.

An adjective used in the predicate to modify the subject is called a predicate adjective; as, —

| | |
|---|---|
| The stars are bright. | The tide is high. |
| The lesson is difficult. | He is wrong. |

Two adjectives, *a* or *an*, and *the*, are called articles. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite article. *The* is called the definite article.

*An* is used before words beginning with a vowel sound; and *a*, before words beginning with a consonant sound; as, *an* apple, *a* man.

Adjectives denoting number are called numeral adjectives. They are of two classes: cardinal, denoting how many; as, *one*, *two*, *three;* and ordinal, denoting order; as, *first*, *second*, *third*.

Write sentences containing the adjectives in the list

which follows. Use each adjective as an immediate modifier of the noun, and then as a predicate adjective: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| handsome | energetic | bright | first |
| three | famous | high | gloomy |

## Lesson 16.

### ABBREVIATIONS. — CONTRACTIONS.

Sometimes we omit a part of the letters of a word and let the rest stand for the word itself; thus, —

Wed. stands for Wednesday; St. for street or saint; ans. for answer; prod. for product; A. Lincoln for Abraham Lincoln; Geo. Washington for George Washington.

The forms Wed., St., ans., prod., A., and Geo., are called abbreviations.

**An abbreviation is one or more letters followed by a period and used to represent a word or words.**

The first letter of a word is the initial letter. When the first letter of a name is followed by a period and stands for the name, it is called an initial. An initial is an abbreviation.

Write the initials of your name.

Write the abbreviations for the names of the days of the week, for the names of the months, for the names of the states.

Write ten abbreviations for words used in arithmetic.

Write the abbreviations of eight titles used before names, and of five used after names.

Write ten abbreviations used in denominate numbers.

I'll come to see you.

This sentence means I will come to see you. *I'll* is a shortened, or contracted, form for *I will*. The omission of the letters *wi* is indicated by the apostrophe.

**Shortened forms in which an apostrophe is used are called contractions.**

What letters are omitted in acc't? isn't? haven't? don't? rec'd? what's? tho'? ev'g? e'en? there's?

How is a contraction indicated? What is the distinction between a contraction and an abbreviation?

## Lesson 17.

### BRIEF BIOGRAPHY.

Christopher Columbus was a Genoese navigator who, sailing westward, discovered the New World in 1492. He made four voyages across the Atlantic, and died in Spain in 1506.

Compare this with the description of an iceberg given on page 6. Do you see any resemblance? What?

Write a short paragraph in answer to these questions: —

Who was Abraham Lincoln? Who was Longfellow?
Who was Cæsar?

## Lesson 18.

### COMPARISON.

John is short, but he is taller than his brother.

Though Carl is very young, he is the oldest boy in this class.

In these examples, *short* tells us about John as he is himself, and *taller* tells us how he compares in stature

with his brother. *Young* tells us of Carl's age, and *oldest* compares his age with the ages of the other boys.

Boston is a large city.
Philadelphia is a larger city.
New York is the largest city in America.

Here the idea expressed by *large* belongs to each city; but it belongs to Philadelphia in a greater degree than to Boston, and to New York in a greater degree than to either of them, or to any other city in the United States.

Of these forms, *large* is used when the object which it describes is not compared with any other; *larger*, when the object is compared with another; and *largest*, when the object is compared with all the others of the kind or group considered.

*Large* is said to be in the positive degree; *larger*, in the comparative degree; and *largest*, in the superlative degree.

Comparison may be made between classes or groups of objects as well as between single objects; as, —

The Patagonians are the tallest of the Indian races.

**The positive degree is used to express a quality which the object has in itself.**

**The comparative degree shows that an object possesses a quality in a higher or lower degree than some other object with which it is compared.**

**The superlative degree shows that an object possesses a quality in a higher or lower degree than any other of the objects with which it is compared.**

Qualities like *round* and *perfect*, that do not admit of varying degrees, are expressed by adjectives in the positive form only.

A small degree of a quality is sometimes expressed by joining to the adjective the letters *ish*, or by placing before it such words as *rather*, *somewhat*. What examples of this can you give? A high degree of a quality is sometimes expressed by placing before the adjective the word *very*, *exceedingly*, etc. Give examples.

The comparative degree is regularly formed from the positive by placing *more* or *less* before it, or by adding the letters *er*.

The superlative degree is regularly formed from the positive by placing *most* or *least* before it, or by adding the letters *est*.

Adjectives of one syllable are compared by adding *er* and *est*. Adjectives of three or more syllables are compared by the use of *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*. Adjectives of two syllables are compared by the one of these methods which gives the result most pleasing to the ear.

Some adjectives are compared irregularly; as, —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| good | better | best |
| bad, ill | worse | worst |
| little | less | least |
| fore | former | first, foremost |
| much, many | more | most |
| far | farther, further | farthest, furthest |
| near | nearer | nearest, next |

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---|---|
| late | later | latest, last |
| old | older, elder | oldest |
| | | eldest |

Find in your dictionary the distinction between *bad* and *ill*, *much* and *many*, *farther* and *further*, *nearest* and *next*, *latest* and *last*, *older* and *elder*, *foremost* and *first*.

## Lesson 19.

### ABBREVIATIONS.

Titles when joined with proper names may be abbreviated, but not when standing alone.

The names of states should be abbreviated when joined with the name of the town or county, but not otherwise.

Morning, noon, and afternoon should be expressed by A.M., M., and P.M. only when the hour is given.

The names of the months may be abbreviated only when used with the day of the month and the year.

Use & only in names of firms.

Use words, not figures, for small numbers, excepting in tables, statistics, numbering of lines, pages, examples, dates, the time of day, and similar cases. Do not begin a sentence with a figure.

I shall call this afternoon (not P.M.).

I live in Massachusetts (not Mass.).

Wheat is 50 cts. per bushel (not bu.). (In a bill or similar paper you might use the abbreviation bu.).

I shall call to see you the first day of December (not Dec.).

## Lesson 20.

### BRIEF BIOGRAPHY.

See page 18.

Who was Henry Clay? Who was Daniel Webster?
Who was Capt. John Smith?

## Lesson 21.

### ADVERBS.

Boys study.

In this sentence the subject and the predicate are each unmodified.

Industrious boys study hard.

Here the subject *boys* is modified by *industrious*, an adjective, and the predicate *study* by *hard*, an adverb.

Very industrious boys may study too hard.

Here the adjective and the adverb each has a modifier; *industrious* is modified by *very*, and *hard* by *too*.

**Words which modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs are called adverbs.**

Adverbs are compared like adjectives.

Select the adverbs in the following sentences, and tell what each adverb modifies: —

You can do this readily, if you work skilfully.
It is very difficult to live idly and happily.

A three-fold cord is not easily broken.

The shortest and surest way to prove a work possible is to set about it earnestly.

How strangely easy difficult things are!

Although genius always commands admiration, character most secures respect.

Never does a man portray his own character more vividly than in his manner of portraying another.

Not only is he idle who does nothing, but he is idle who might be better employed.

"I find," said Livingston, "that all eminent men work hard."

## Lesson 22.

### PUNCTUATION. — QUOTATIONS.

A celebrated modern writer says, "Take care of the minutes, and the hours will take care of themselves."

"One to-day," says Franklin, "is worth two to-morrows."

When we use the exact words of another, we are said to quote them; and the quoted words form a quotation.

*A quotation should be enclosed in quotation marks.*

*Words which introduce a short quotation, or which interrupt the quotation, should be followed or enclosed by commas.*

What quotations are there in the two sentences at the head of this lesson? Why are the commas used in these sentences?

*When books, magazines, and newspapers are mentioned in a sentence, it is customary to enclose the titles of the books in quotation marks, and to print the names of the magazines and papers in italics.*

*A quotation within a quotation is enclosed in single quotation marks; as,* —

The teacher replied, "Franklin's adage, 'An empty bag cannot stand upright,' suggests a very important truth."

## Lesson 23.

### THE CLAUSE. — THE PHRASE.

You may go. I will remain at home.

These sentences may be combined thus: You may go and I will remain at home.

You may go. You will return early.

These sentences may be combined thus: You may go if you will return early.

We see that sentences are sometimes formed by the union of shorter sentences. These shorter sentences are subdivisions of the longer sentence that they form.

**The subdivisions of a sentence which contain a subject and its predicate are called clauses.**

What are the clauses in these sentences: —

You may go if you will return early.

A fool speaks all his mind, but a wise man reserves something for hereafter.

The *wise* man will act *prudently.*
The man *of wisdom* will act *with prudence.*
Deliberate *cautiously,* but act *decisively.*
Deliberate *with caution,* but act *with decision.*

The italicized words in the sentences above are all modifiers. Which are modifiers of a noun, and hence are adjective modifiers? Which are modifiers of a verb, and hence are adverbial modifiers? Which modifiers consist of a single word only? Which of two words?

**When two or more words, not a subject and predicate, form a group having the use of a single word, they are called a phrase.**

Mention the phrases in the sentences at the head of this lesson. Which is the adjective phrase? Which are the adverbial phrases? What is an adjective phrase? What is an adverbial phrase?

Find the phrases in these sentences: —

The cold of winter is severe.
The heat of summer is sometimes intense.
The lesson was prepared with care.
The bush is covered with roses.
He pays his rent by the month.
He stood on the seashore.
Tears came into his eyes.

Some of these phrases can be expressed by a single word; others cannot be so expressed, but still have the use of a single word, and are, therefore, phrases.

## Lesson 24.

### CAPITAL LETTERS.

I. Begin with a capital letter the first word of every

1. Sentence.
2. Line of poetry.

3. Quotation, example, precept, or question which is a sentence within a sentence.
4. Word or combination of words separately numbered.

II. Begin with a capital letter

1. Proper nouns.
2. Words derived from proper nouns and all abbreviations of proper nouns.
3. Titles of honor or office when used in connection with proper names or when referring to particular individuals.
4. Names of the Deity and pronouns referring to Him.
5. Common nouns joined to proper nouns to form compound names.
6. Names representing objects as persons.
7. The first word and all leading words in the titles of books and headings of compositions, etc.
8. Names of months, days of the week, festivals, political parties, religious denominations, important historical events, etc.
9. The words *north, south, east,* and *west* when denoting parts of the country, but not when denoting directions.

III. The words *I* and *O* should be capitals, and the letters I, V, X, L, C, D, and M used as numerals, should usually be capitals.

Explain the use of the capitals in the lesson above, and in the following sentences: —

Have you heard people say, "Procrastination is the thief of time"? Since last Fourth of July I have lived in the South. Col. Hunter C. White has been elected sheriff, and is now Sheriff White.

## Lesson 25.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not use

*most* for *almost*,
*bad* for *severe*,
*every* for *all*, *entire*,
*very badly* for *very much*,
*bad* for *sick* or *ill*,
*good* for *well*.

*Most* as an adverb means in the highest degree, while *almost* means nearly. *Very badly* means in an evil manner. *Bad* is the opposite of *good*, and should not be used for *severe* or *sick*. *Every* means each one of several. *Good* is not an adverb.

Copy these sentences, selecting the right word or phrase from those inclosed by brackets: —

The engine whistles opposite our house [almost, most] every time it passes.

She was unable to come, because of a [bad, severe] headache.

I should like to go [very badly, very much].

You look as though you felt [bad, ill].

Are you [most, almost] ready?

I feel very [ill, bad], for I have a [bad, severe] sore throat and a [severe, bad] pain in my side.

He was a boy in whom we had [entire, every] confidence.

Did you sleep [good, well]?

You have written this exercise very [well, good].

[All, every] hope of retreat was cut off.

## Lesson 26.

### BRIEF BIOGRAPHY.

Who was Napoleon? Who was Peter the Great?
Who was Alexander?

## Lesson 27.

### PREPOSITIONS.

The book in my hand is a grammar.
The book on the desk is a dictionary.
The book by my side is an arithmetic.
The boy near the stove is cold.
The bird at the window is a robin.
The words over the clock are the motto of our school.

What phrases are there in the sentences above? What word does each phrase modify? What shows the relation of the noun of each phrase to the word which the phrase modifies?

**A word which shows the relation of the noun or pronoun in a phrase to the word which the phrase modifies is called a preposition.**

Name the prepositions in the sentences at the head of this lesson.

The clock on the wall is too fast.
The close of the day will soon come.
You should be polite to everybody.
Labor with diligence.
Life's greatest good is wrought on the anvil of industry.
Idleness is the key of beggary.
The secret of success is constancy to purpose.
It gives us less trouble to learn in youth than to be ignorant in age.

Select the phrases in the preceding sentences, and tell what word each phrase modifies. Name the prepositions in these sentences. Between what words does each preposition show the relation?

## Lesson 28.

### MARKS OF CORRECTION.

The caret [ ∧ ] shows where something is to be inserted. Words to be inserted may be written above the caret or in the margin.

If a period is to be inserted, place it in the nearer margin and inclose it in a circle [ ⊙ ]; if quotation marks or apostrophes are to be inserted, place them in the margin within an angle [ ٧ ٧ ]; if a dash or hyphen is to be inserted, place it in the margin between two oblique lines [ /—/, /-/ ], at the right of a comma, semicolon, colon, or of one or two letters that are to be inserted, draw a single oblique line [ ,/ ;/ :/ m/ ].

When something is to be omitted, it may be cancelled by an oblique or a horizontal line, and a dele [ δ ] placed in the margin.

When something is to be changed, it may be cancelled as though it were to be omitted, and what is to be inserted may be written above it or in the nearer margin.

If a small letter should be a capital, draw three lines under it and write *cap.* in the margin. If a capital letter should be a small letter, draw an oblique line through it and write *l.c.* in the margin.

If a new paragraph is to be made, put ¶ at the place where the new paragraph should begin, and also in the margin. If two paragraphs are to be united, draw a line from the last word of the first paragraph to the first word of the second, and put "No ¶" in the margin.

If words are to be transposed, draw a curved line between

them under the first and over the second, and write *tr.* in the margin.

If words are struck out which should remain, place dots under the words that are to remain and write *stet.* in the margin.

You should employ these marks of correction in your daily criticism of written work.

Explain the marks of correction in this selection: –

*Cap.* make yourselves nests of pleasant thoughts!
*No ¶* None of us yet know, for none of us have been
*l.e.* taught in early ~~Y~~outh, what fairy palaces we ~~we~~ δ
*a/* may build of beutiful thoughts proof against all ,/
:/ *tr.* adversity fancies bright, satisfied memories, noble
*l.e. i/* ~~H~~stories, faithful sayings, teasure houses ~~from~~ for *i/*
*stet.* precious ~~and restful~~ thoughts ⊙

— RUSKIN.

## Lesson 29.

### DICTATION. — CAPITAL LETTERS.

Write these sentences from dictation: —

White Rose, talk to me.
I don't know what to do.
Why do you say no word to me,
Who say so much to you?

Has your Uncle Isaac recovered from his illness?

For unto you is born this day, in the city of David, a Saviour which is Christ the Lord.

You will find that the state of Kansas occupies very nearly the middle spot of North America, being equally distant from the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west; from the frozen waters of Hudson's Bay on the north, and the tepid gulf stream on the south.

Michael Angelo used to say, "Trifles make perfection, and perfection is no trifle."

The Thirteenth Amendment, abolishing slavery, was declared adopted as a part of the Constitution of the United States on December 18, 1865.

The surrender of Lee ended the war between the North and South, and his soldiers turned homeward, no longer Confederate soldiers, but American citizens.

## Lesson 30.

### FORMAL NOTES.

In formal notes of invitation, acceptance, regret, congratulation, or condolence, the writer refers to himself by name instead of using a pronoun. They should be written upon small note paper, or upon cards, and equal margins should be left at top and bottom. Should the note occupy more than one page, it may be continued upon the third.

In formal notes the heading, introduction, and conclusion are omitted. The place and date are written below the note, at the left-hand side. The day of the week is usually written, while the year is omitted. The letters *R.S.V.P.* are often written upon invitations. They signify that an answer is requested, and are taken from the French, *Répondez, s'il vous plait.* [Reply, if you please.]

Copy the following formal notes: —

Mr. and Mrs. John L. Morrison request the pleasure of Mr. and Mrs. Irving Hancock's company at dinner, on the evening of Thursday, May 29, at six o'clock.

492 Lincoln Ave.,
*Monday, May 26.*

Mr. and Mrs. Irving Hancock accept with pleasure Mr. and Mrs. John L. Morrison's kind invitation for Thursday evening.

14 Eddy St.,
*Tuesday, May 27.*

Mr. and Mrs. Irving Hancock regret that, owing to sickness in the family, they are unable to accept Mr. and Mrs. John L. Morrison's kind invitation for Thursday evening, May 29.

14 Eddy St., *May 27.*

## Lesson 31.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

Stephen and Earl will soon be here.
The work was done in good season and to my satisfaction.
You may recite, and then you may be dismissed.

Each of these sentences contains the word *and*. In the first sentence *and* connects two words; in the second, two phrases; in the third, two clauses.

**Words used to connect words, phrases, or clauses are called conjunctions.**

*And*, *but*, *if*, *or*, *nor*, and *though* are the conjunctions most frequently used.

In the following sentences select the conjunctions, and tell what they connect: —

Wishes fail, but wills prevail.

Knavery and flattery are blood relations.

He thought as a sage, though he felt as a man.

Energy and persistence conquer all things.

Money is a good servant, but a bad master.

No entertainment is so cheap as reading, nor any pleasure so lasting.

Washington was a patriot and a statesman.

The sermon was long, though interesting.

Will you come to see me now and then?

Prepositions and conjunctions are both connectives; that is, both are used to join other words. A conjunction connects words, phrases, or clauses; while a preposition always forms part of a phrase, and connects the noun or pronoun of the phrase to the word which the phrase modifies.

## Lesson 32.

### PUNCTUATION.—THE SERIES.

Mercury, lead, and tin are metals.

From Alaska we obtain furs, fish, and lumber.

The leading statesmen of the revolutionary period were Washington, Franklin, Hamilton, and Adams.

Neither envy, jealousy, hatred, nor revenge finds a resting-place in a noble heart.

What three words in the first sentence have the same use? What three words in the second sentence? What four words in the third sentence? What four words in the fourth sentence?

**Three or more words or phrases which follow one another, and are used alike in a sentence, are called a series of words or series of phrases.**

*The words or phrases of a series should be separated by commas.*

*If all the terms of a series are connected by conjunctions, the commas should be omitted.*

Complete the punctuation of these sentences: —

He imagined that he saw the high church towers rising up into the morning sky the town starting into life once more the river glistening as it rolled and the country bright with dew.

To gild refined gold to paint the lily
To throw a perfume on the violet
To smooth the ice or add another hue
Unto the rainbow or with taper-light
To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess. — SHAKESPEARE.

## Lesson 33.

### SYNONYMS.

**Words very nearly alike in meaning are called synonyms.**

Find several synonyms for each of these words: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| noise | wrath | recreation | care |
| behavior | sight | heed | fear |

## Lesson 34.

### FORMAL NOTES.

Write these formal notes from dictation: —

Miss Laura Metcalf requests the pleasure of Miss Kate Merritt's company on Wednesday evening, December 15th, at eight o'clock, to meet Miss Flora Wayland of Peoria, Ill.

634 South Desplaines St.

The honor of your presence is requested at the Graduating Exercises of Smith St. Grammar School, to be held at the Opera House on Thursday evening, June 19th, 1886, at eight o'clock.

Mr. and Mrs. Allan F. Green
At Home
Wednesdays in October,
From seven until ten o'clock.

378 Washington St.

## Lesson 35.

### INTERJECTIONS. — REVIEW.

**Words used to express feeling merely, and not as parts of sentences, are called interjections; as, —**

*Oh!* I have lost you all.
*Pshaw!* What a notion!
*Poh!* That is of no account.
*Alas!* How short is life!
How short, *alas,* is life!
*Hurrah!* the prize is ours.
*Hip! Hip! Hurrah!*
*Dear me!* what shall I do?

Words used to imitate sounds, and not used as parts of sentences, are also interjections; as, —

"*Chirr!* you can't catch me," says the squirrel.

*An interjection should be followed by an exclamation point.*

This exclamation point may immediately follow the interjection, or may be placed after the phrase, clause, or sentence which completes the exclamation.

*O* and *oh* should be distinguished. *O* is used before a noun or pronoun denoting the person spoken to, and is not directly followed by any mark of punctuation; *oh* is an interjection denoting pleasure, pain, surprise, or fear; as, —

When, O my countrymen, will you resent this treachery?
Oh, what a fearful plunge!

Write five sentences, and use an interjection with each.

**The several classes into which words are divided according to their use are called Parts of Speech.**

There are eight parts of speech: noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

Give several examples of each part of speech.

## Lesson 36.

### HYPHEN. — COMPOUND WORDS.

It will often happen that there is room at the end of a line to write part of a word, but not the whole of it. In this case the word is divided, one or more of its syllables being written at the end of the line, and the remainder

carried to the beginning of the next line. To show that the remainder of the word is to be found on the next line, a hyphen [-] is placed at the end of the first line.

A syllable or a short word should not be divided at the end of a line of writing.

Some words are made up of two or more words; as, —

brother-in-law, sail-boat, saw-mill, ice-house, carving-knife, four-sided, old-fashioned, time-keeper.

These are called compound words.

The hyphen should be placed between the parts of a compound word unless the parts have become so united by custom as to be pronounced as one word; as, —

workman, upon, withstand, whitewash, bookseller, nobleman.

When several words are used as a single adjective they should be united by hyphens; as, —

a never-to-be-forgotten day, a well-known proverb.

"The Providence Journal" gives its compositors the following list of compound words which should be written with a hyphen: —

after-life, anti-slavery, ante-room, above-board, by-and-by, brownstone-front, co-worker, co-education, coat-of-arms, commander-in-chief [and all words of that class], easy-chair, east-bound, fac-simile, four-in-hand, golden-rod, half-dozen, half-century [but half a dozen, half a century], horse-power, man-of-war, one-half [and all fractions], sergeant-at-arms, self-control, trans-continental, to-day, to-morrow, to-night, 3-year-old colt, twenty-odd years, ex-President, up-stairs, down-stairs, C-sharp, E-flat. [And similar words.]

## Lesson 37.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not use —

| | |
|---|---|
| *how* for *that*, | *and* for *or* or *but*, |
| *without* for *unless*, | *had ought* for *ought*, |
| *but what* for *that*, | *previous* for *previously*. |

*How* and *without* are not conjunctions, and hence should not be used instead of the conjunctions *that* and *unless*. *But that*, not *but what*, is often used as a compound conjunction. *And* expresses the relation of addition, while *or* expresses an alternative, and *but* an opposition. Never put *had* or *hadn't* before *ought*. The adjective *previous* should not be used instead of the adverb *previously*.

Select the right words or phrases from those in brackets, and explain why the other words or phrases in the brackets should not be used in these sentences: —

There is no doubt [but what, that] you will succeed.

The canal cannot be finished [without, unless] more funds are furnished.

You cannot learn your lesson [unless, without] you study.

He told me [how, that] he would go if he could.

[Previous, previously] to our coming nothing had been done.

You said [that, how] the Mayflowers were in bloom.

William Paxton said [that, how] thoughts are mightier than armies.

I'll not deny [but what, but] you are right.

He [hadn't ought, ought not] to have failed.

Report is a quick traveller [and, but] an unsafe guide.

They enjoy a study like history [and, or] literature.

Do you think you [had ought, ought] to go?

Truth hits the mark [but, and] falsehood rebounds and strikes him who utters it.

## Lesson 38.

### RAMBLING SENTENCES.

In telling a story or in writing about something, do not join sentence after sentence by using *and* or some other connective. See that each sentence is complete in itself, and not a union of several complete sentences.

Improve the following sentences: —

The tiger is not a bold hunter and he does not chase his prey, and he hides in the grass by the roadside and in ditches near drinking places, and, like the cat, he waits until his victim is near enough and then pounces suddenly upon it, and cattle soon learn when a tiger is about, and they stay in the open meadows for they can scent him a long way off, and they keep well away from the tall reeds and thickets.

There is a kind of spider that is called the mason spider, and it builds a house and fixes to it a door, and the door opens and shuts on a hinge like the lid of a box, and this spider digs a hole in the ground about the size of a man's finger, and lines it with silk of its own weaving and keeps it warm and dry, and it makes a trap-door of wet earth mixed with a little silk, and the hinges on which this door opens and shuts are made of fine silk; and then there is another kind of spider called the geometrical spider, and it weaves its web with lines running out like the spokes of a wheel from a center, and it crosses these spokes with regular lines.

## Lesson 39.

### DESCRIPTION.

If you were to describe the horse, what would you tell first? What next? What then? Write your answers like this: —

OUTLINE FOR DESCRIPTION OF THE HORSE.

1. What the horse is.
2. What he is good for.
3. How he is trained.
4. How he is kept; what he eats.
5. What the parts of the horse are, and something about each part.
6. Where the horse was first found.
7. How he looks.
8. A story about a horse, showing his intelligence.

You can think of many other things to say about the horse. Put them all down just as they come into your mind, and then arrange them in the order you think best.

Think what you will say about each item. Say it; then rewrite the whole in good sentences.

Perhaps as you think about it you will decide to leave out some points, or add others.

Here is an improvement in the order of your topics: —

1. What the horse is. [Class.]
2. Description of the parts of a horse.
3. What he eats.
4. Where the horse is now found, and where first found.
5. Comparison of the horse and the ox.

6. For what he is used.
7. Story, etc.

The partial description below will help you. Read it over, and use it in your own language in the description you are to write, adding to it, and filling out the other points.

PARTIAL DESCRIPTION OF THE HORSE.

The horse belongs to the class of animals having a solid hoof. His head is long, with short ears. The neck is adorned with a mane. The body is oval. The fore-legs are nearly straight; the hind-legs have a backward bend. The horny covering of the foot is called the hoof.

The color of the horse varies, and there are white, brown, sorrel, black, and spotted horses.

The horse is found in almost all parts of the earth, but he originally came from Asia. He is a spirited and docile animal. He is used for riding, driving, carrying burdens, and working machinery. His skin makes a good leather, and his hair is used for stuffing furniture.

## Lesson 40.

### COMPLEMENTS.

Birds fly. Fishes swim.

In each of these sentences a full thought is expressed. We can add to each a modifier, and say, —

Birds fly swiftly, Fishes swim in water;

but each of the original sentences expresses a full thought without the added words.

Does "Mary is" express a complete thought? Is what? "Mary is" needs some word or words added to it to complete its meaning; as, Mary is tall, Mary is a girl. Here *tall* and *girl* are joined to the verb *is* to make the meaning of the sentence complete. They are called complements of the verb *is* because they complete its meaning.

**A word used to complete the meaning of a verb is called its complement.**

Is "The boy took" a complete statement? What complement does it require? "The boy took his slate." What complement to the verb is used in this sentence?

The complement of a verb may either describe its subject, as *tall* or *girl* in the sentences "Mary is tall," "Mary is a girl"; or it may name that upon which the subject acts, as *slate* in the sentence "The boy took his slate."

**A noun or an adjective used as a complement which describes the subject is called a predicate noun or a predicate adjective.**

**A noun or pronoun used as a complement which tells upon what the subject acts is called an objective complement, or simply an object, of the verb.**

A predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject. A predicate adjective modifies the subject.

The horse eats the grass. The horse is swift.
The horse is a quadruped.

What is the complement in the first sentence? In the second? In the third? Which is the objective complement? Which verb has an object? Which complement is a predicate noun? Which is a predicate adjective?

**An incomplete verb is one which requires a complement.**
**A complete verb is one which does not require a complement.**

Be careful to distinguish between a complement and a modifier of a verb. A modifier of a verb makes some change in the thought expressed by the verb, or adds something to it. A complement of an incomplete verb is essential to the expression of any thought at all.

He heard a noise there.

The word *noise* is a complement, and *there* is a modifier. *He heard* expresses only part of a thought, *he heard a noise* expresses a complete thought, *he heard a noise there* expresses the complete thought more definitely.

## Lesson 41.

### ANALYSIS.

**The elements of a sentence are the parts that have a separate use in the sentence.**

An element may be any part of speech, a phrase, or a clause.

**Analysis is the separation of a sentence into its elements, with a statement of the relation of those elements to each other.**

**Parsing is naming the parts of speech in a sentence and stating their modifications, or grammatical properties, and constructions.**

We have already learned what the subject and the predicate of a sentence are.

The simple subject of a sentence is the subject of the verb. The simple predicate is the verb, if the verb is a complete verb; or the verb and its complement, if the verb is an incomplete verb.

In analyzing a sentence find first the verb, and second the subject of the verb.

NOTE. — The subject of a sentence is the answer to the question made by putting *who* or *what* before the predicate.

Analyze the following sentences by naming the subject and the predicate: —

1. School begins.
2. Dogs barked.
3. Snow has fallen.
4. John will forget.
5. He will have gone.
6. They are forsaken.
7. Iron has been melted.
8. Did you understand?
9. Stars were twinkling.
10. Who had been sleeping?
11. Promises must be kept.
12. March.
13. Halt.
14. Will he come?
15. We could have staid.
16. You did understand.

The sentences for analysis should be analyzed both orally and in writing.

In the written analysis of a sentence we may draw two straight lines under the subject and two waving lines under the verb; thus, — School begins.

When the verb is in two or more parts it may be marked thus, — Did you understand?

A word understood may be indicated by the letter X; thus, — X Halt.

## Lesson 42.

### FORMAL NOTES.

Write a formal note, declining to attend a concert.

Write a formal acceptance of an invitation to a lecture, sent by Mr. Arthur Gamble to Miss Ella Conine.

Write a formal invitation to a class reunion.

## Lesson 43.

### COMPLEMENTS.

The sky is cloudy.
The wind blows.
Soon the rain will fall.
The wasps were the first paper-makers.
Worry, not work, kills men.
Butterflies fly about in the daytime, but moths fly mostly at night and at twilight.

In these sentences which are the complete verbs? Which are the incomplete? Which complements are nouns? Which complement is an adjective? Which complement is a predicate noun? Which complement is an objective complement?

Write five sentences containing complete verbs. Five containing incomplete verbs with adjective complements. Five containing predicate noun complements. Five containing objective complements.

## Lesson 44.

### PUNCTUATION.—WORDS OF ADDRESS.

John, you may recite.
You, John, may recite.
You may recite, John.
Where are you going, my pretty maid?
Boast not, my dear friends, of to-morrow.
I am, dear madam, your obedient servant.
Can you tell, Mary, who discovered America?

What word or words, denoting the person or persons addressed, do you find in each of these sentences?

*A word or an expression representing a person or thing addressed should be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or commas.*

Find illustrations of this rule in your Reader.

## Lesson 45.

### SYNONYMS.

Find several synonyms for each of the following words: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ask | give | erase | increase |
| join | reduce | tell | plague |

## Lesson 46.

### FORMAL NOTES.

Write a formal invitation to a birthday party.
Write a formal note of acceptance.
Write a formal note, declining the invitation.

## Lesson 47.

### ANALYSIS. — SIMPLE ADJECTIVE ELEMENT.

Analyze the following sentences by naming the subject, the predicate, and the adjective element modifying the subject.

1. Cold winds may chill. 2. Soft music will please. 3. The old house remains. 4. A boy is running. 5. An apple might have fallen. 6. Mild weather will come. 7. Wealthy men should give. 8. The large house might have been painted. 9. Should gray hairs be respected? 10. Will you all come?

An adjective element may be indicated in written analysis by a line drawn over it; as, —

Cold winds may chill.

## Lesson 48.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The camel. The bear.

[See page 40.]

## Lesson 49.

### TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Most verbs express action. This action may, or may not, be of such a kind as to *pass over* from the subject to some person or thing. In the sentence "The workmen felled the tree," the action expressed by the verb *felled* passes on to the object *tree*.

**Verbs asserting an action that passes over from the subject to some object are called transitive verbs.** [*Felled* is a transitive verb.]

**Verbs which do not assert an action passing over from the subject to some object are called intransitive verbs.**

The bird flies. [*Flies* is an intransitive verb.]

Some intransitive verbs assert action and some do not; as, —

The fish swims. The child sleeps.

James is captain of the company.
He seems a good boy.
He looks very tall.
He appears quite young.
He learns his lessons every day.
He writes very well and makes pretty drawings on his slate.
He will become a fine man.

In the sentences above, which verbs are transitive? Which are intransitive? Which is complete? Which are incomplete? Which complements are nouns? Which are adjectives? Which noun complements mean the same person as the subject? Which do not mean the same person as the subject?

## Lesson 50.

### PUNCTUATION.

Complete the punctuation of these sentences: —

And wherefore do the poor complain
The rich man asked of me
Come, walk abroad with me I said
And I will answer thee.

James your friend Carl called while you were away. Did

he leave any word mother he said tell James to come to see my rabbits.

Who said experience is a dear school; but fools will learn in no other?

Shakespeare says he jests at scars that never felt a wound.

Longfellow says life is real, life is earnest.

Captain asked a sailor is anything lost if you know where it is no replied the captain well, then said the sailor your silver teapot which just fell out of my hand is not lost for I know that it is in the bottom of the ocean.

When my dog has been whipped he will come to me penitently and lick my hand as if to say I am sorry and wont do it again.

A friend said to me Sir Isaac Newton near the close of his life said If I have accomplished anything above the average of men, it has been by the power of patient work.

What is the difference in meaning between the two sentences below?

Roger says he can punctuate the sentence.

"Roger," says he, "can punctuate the sentence."

## Lesson 51.

### ANALYSIS.

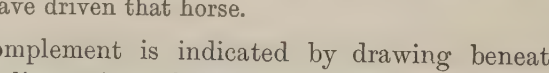
Analyze the following sentences by naming —

1. The subject.
2. The predicate.
3. The modifiers of the subject.
4. The complements of the verb.

5. The modifiers of the verb.
6. The modifiers of the complement of the verb.

1. Henry is the boy. 2. He was a painter. 3. He may be a merchant. 4. He might have been a smart lawyer. 5. The way was long. 6. Foxes are cunning. 7. George Washington was elected president. 8. The old man has become a confirmed invalid. 9. Little Mary was usually considered a smart girl. 10. The wise are the good. 11. Are they wise? 12. Was he well? 13. It is I. 14. Thou fallest a blessed martyr. 15. The milk is turning sour. 16. He has been growing fleshy. 17. She looked pale. 18. The air felt cold. 19. I have driven that horse.

A complement is indicated by drawing beneath it a dotted line. A predicate noun may have the letter *n* written beneath the line; a predicate adjective the letter *a*; and an object the letter *o*.




## Lesson 52.

### BUSINESS LETTERS.

A business letter should be clear and brief. It should also be so complete in itself that the receiver will not need to refer to former letters in order to understand it.

An answer to a business letter should begin by acknowledging the receipt of that letter and speaking of its contents. When you write for information, inclose a stamp for reply.

Be sure that your full address is given in every letter. Write the street and number as well as the city and state. When writing from a village, name the county. In signing a business letter write your given name in full, not merely the initials, that the receiver may know whether to address his answer to a gentleman or a lady. (If unmarried, a lady may place Miss in brackets before her name; and if married, Mrs.)

Copy the following letter: —

16 State St., Cincinnati, Ohio,
*Jan.* 29, 1891.

K. W. Clark, Esq.,
Milwaukee, Wis.

Dear Sir, —

Your note of the 5th inst., inclosing order and check for $55.60, was duly received. The goods were shipped this morning by express to your address. Herewith please find receipt for check.

Hoping that we may continue to be honored by your orders,
We remain,
Yours respectfully,
Boyd, Smith & Co.
per M.

## Lesson 53.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The lion. The tiger. The elephant.

[See page 40.]

## Lesson 54.

### CLASSES OF NOUNS.

You have learned that there are two kinds of nouns, common and proper.

Under common nouns are included abstract nouns, verbal nouns, and collective nouns.

**Abstract nouns are the names of qualities; as,—**

strength, beauty, virtue, warmth, hope.

**Verbal nouns are derived from verbs, and are usually names of actions; as,—**

running, boxing, dancing, reading.

**Collective nouns are names of collections of objects; e.g.,—**

army is the name of a collection of soldiers.

Tell to what each collective noun in the list which follows may be applied; as,—

| A regiment of soldiers. | | | A swarm of bees. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| row | bunch | cluster | team | herd |
| drove | fleet | company | cloud | squadron |
| school | class | family | crowd | crew |

Copy all the nouns in the sentences which follow, and tell the class of each:—

He was a good fellow, with boldness and diffidence curiously mingled in him.

In the woods we can hear the murmur of insects, the twitter of birds, the scrambling of squirrels, and sometimes the rush of unseen animals.

The spar that projects from the bow of the vessel is the bowsprit.

The silkworm feeds upon the leaves of the mulberry.

Solon, being asked by Crœsus who was the happiest man, referred the King of Lydia to a poor cottager of Greece who never desired greater wealth or a better condition than he possessed.

## Lesson 55.

### PUNCTUATION. — WORDS OMITTED.

Providence, R. I., Jan. 25, 1891.

If this is the heading of a letter, it will mean, [this letter is written in] Providence [which is in the state of] R.I., [on] Jan. 25, [in the year] 1891.

To err is human; to forgive, [is] divine.
He was a tall, [and] large man.

In the sentences just given the commas take the place of the words in brackets.

*A comma should generally be used to show the omission of a word or of words readily understood and necessary to the sense.*

Explain the punctuation of the following sentences: —

Nathaniel Hawthorne was born at Salem, Mass., July 4, 1804. He died at Plymouth, N.H., Thursday, May 19, 1864.

Punctuate these sentences: —

I met Col Jones at East Saginaw Saginaw Co Mich July 4 1887.

Columbus set sail from Spain Friday Aug 3 1492, and discovered the New World Friday Oct 12 1492.

Geo Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States Thursday Apr 30 1789.

*This* refers to an object near at hand; *that* to an object farther away.

Virtue brings its own reward; vice its own punishment.

## Lesson 56.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not use: —

*a good deal* for *a great deal,*
*grow smaller* for *become smaller,*
*not hardly* for *hardly* or *scarcely,*
*directly* for *as soon as,*
*quite a* for *a large, a considerable,*
*appreciate* for *value highly,*
*real* for *very.*

The thought is that the *deal* or amount is great in extent, not good in kind. [*Very much* or *considerable* is sometimes still better than *a great deal.*] *To grow* means to increase: we may say grow larger, but not grow smaller. *Hardly* means with difficulty, and *not hardly* would mean not with difficulty, or easily. *Directly* is an adverb, not a connective. *Quite* is an adverb, hence cannot modify a noun. *To appreciate* means to have a just estimate of. *Real* means genuine, true, and is an adjective, not an adverb.

Select the right word or phrase from those in brackets, and explain why the other words or phrases in brackets should not be used in these sentences: —

His income [grows, becomes] smaller every year.

Open the door [directly, as soon as] you hear his footsteps.

I saw [a large, quite a] quantity of apples on the ground in the orchard.

We [scarcely, don't hardly] expect them before next month.

There is a [good, great] deal of doubt expressed.

It was [very, real] kind in you to come.

I shall start [as soon as, directly] I have finished this piece of work.

She seemed to [appreciate, value highly] the gift.

I can [not hardly, scarcely] decide the question.

Lucile has grown [real, very] tall.

There is [much, a good deal] to be said on both sides of the question.

[Appreciate, value highly] the friendship of him who stands by you in time of trouble.

[Quite a, a large] crowd soon collected.

## Lesson 57.

### BUSINESS LETTERS.

Write a note to a hackman in your city, and ask him to call at your residence in time to take you to a certain train.

As a physician, write a note to a teacher, asking that one of your patients be excused from singing-lessons on account of a throat difficulty.

Write to a real estate agent for a list of houses which he has to rent. Limit the location, size, and price.

Write the answer of the real estate agent.

## Lesson 58.

### NUMBER.

**Number is the form of a word by which is shown whether the word denotes one object or more than one.**

The words *man* and *book* each denote a single object, and are in the singular number. The words *men* and *books* denote more than one object, and are in the plural number.

**Nouns that mean one are in the singular number.**
**Nouns that mean more than one are in the plural number.**

### General Rule.

*The plural of nouns is usually formed by adding* s *or* es *to the singular. If the singular ends in a sound with which the sound of* s *will unite,* s *is added to make the plural; otherwise,* es *is added for the plural form; as,* —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| gate | gates | form | forms |
| tax | taxes | church | churches |

---

### SPECIAL RULES FOR PLURAL FORMS.

I. The plural of most nouns ending in *f* or *fe* is formed by changing *f* or *fe* to *ves*; as, —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| half | halves | knife | knives |
| leaf | leaves | self | selves |

II. The plural of most nouns ending in *y* preceded by a *vowel* is formed by adding *s* to the singular; the plural of nouns ending in *y* preceded by a *consonant* is formed by changing *y* to *ies*; as, —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| chimney | chimneys | study | studies |
| day | days | sky | skies |

III. The plural of these nouns is formed irregularly; as, —

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| man | men | foot | feet | mouse | mice |
| woman | women | tooth | teeth | louse | lice |
| child | children | goose | geese | ox | oxen |

## Lesson 59.

PUNCTUATION. — WORDS IN PAIRS. — YES AND NO.

*Words used in pairs take a comma after each pair ; as,* —

Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I give my hand and my heart to this vote.

The poor and the rich, the weak and the strong, the young and the old, have one common Father.

*Yes* and *no* are equivalent to clauses or sentences, and are followed by the same mark of punctuation as the clause or sentence for which they stand would be.

According to their use, they may be followed by a comma, a semicolon, a colon, a period, an interrogation point, or an exclamation point. See Lesson 4.

## Lesson 60.

SYNONYMS.

Find several synonyms for each of the following words : —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ludicrous | famous | suitable | huge |
| wholly | merciless | strong | gentle |
| stubborn | peevish | obscure | dreary |

## Lesson 61.

### BUSINESS LETTERS.

Write to the president of some college and request a catalogue.

You are away from home for the summer vacation. Write to the publishers of your daily paper, and direct that the paper be forwarded to your summer address.

## Lesson 62.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The sheep. The goat. The cow.

## Lesson 63.

### SPECIAL RULES FOR PLURAL FORMS (continued).

IV. Some nouns have two plurals; as, —

| | |
|---|---|
| brother | { brothers [of the same family]<br>{ brethren [of the same society] |
| cloth | { clothes [garments]<br>{ cloths [kinds of cloth] |
| die | { dies [for stamping]<br>{ dice [for gaming] |
| fish | { fishes [separately]<br>{ fish [collectively] |
| genius | { geniuses [men of talent]<br>{ genii [spirits] |

| | |
|---|---|
| index | { indexes [of books]<br>{ indices [algebraic term] |
| penny | { pennies [separately]<br>{ pence [collectively] |
| shot | { shots [discharges of a gun]<br>{ shot [pieces of metal] |
| staff | { staves [ordinary use]<br>{ staffs [military term] |

V. Some nouns have but one form for both singular and plural numbers; as, —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| cod | deer | sheep |
| trout | hose | swine |
| means | species | amends |

VI. Some nouns are used in the plural only; as, —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aborigines | dregs | pantaloons | snuffers |
| alms | eaves | pincers | suds |
| annals | entrails | riches | tongs |
| antipodes | remains | scales | trousers |
| ashes | mumps | scissors | tidings |
| nuptials | shears | victuals | vitals |

VII. The following nouns appear to be plural in form, but are used in the singular number only: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| physics | news | mathematics |
| politics | molasses | gallows |

## Lesson 64.

### LETTER-WRITING.

Imagine yourself a pupil in some city of South Dakota, and write to an Eastern friend a letter telling about your

state, its climate, products, extensive farms and manner of cultivation, its tree claims and homesteads, etc.

Write a letter addressed to some pupil in the public schools of Saginaw, Michigan, asking for information about the manufacture of salt.

Write an answer to the last letter.

## Lesson 65.

### SPECIAL RULES FOR PLURAL FORMS (continued).

VIII. Many nouns derived from foreign languages retain their original plurals; as, —

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| genus | genera | crisis | crises | datum | data |
| vertebra | vertebrae | focus | foci | larva | larvae |

IX. When a noun is used as an adjective, it takes the singular form only; as, —

| | |
|---|---|
| a foot rule. | *But we should say,* — |
| a ten-foot pole. | a pole ten feet long. |
| a five-dollar bill. | a note for ten dollars. |
| a ten-pound note. | a fence six feet high. |
| a six-foot fence. | a twenty-five-horse-power engine. |

X. Compound nouns form their plurals in three ways, —

[*a*] by pluralizing the principal word; as, —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| son-in-law | sons-in-law | postal-card | postal-cards |

[*b*] by pluralizing both words; as, —

| | |
|---|---|
| man-servant | men-servants |

[*c*] by pluralizing the compound noun as though it were a single word; as, —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cupful | cupfuls | horseshoe | horseshoes |

XI. Proper nouns form their plurals like common nouns. A proper noun and a title may have either the noun or the title pluralized; as, —

The Miss Hasgoods.
The Misses Hasgood.

XII. The plural of letters, figures, and signs is formed by adding to the singular the apostrophe and *s*; as, —

15's, +'s, w's.

## Lesson 66.

### GOOD MANNERS.

Tell what constitutes true politeness by giving the thoughts of the following quotations. Arrange the quotations in the order which you think best, and then express their thoughts in your own words.

Gentleness is the great point to be observed in the study of manners. — N. P. Willis.

A small unkindness is a great offence. — Hannah More.

Politeness is as natural to delicate natures as perfume is to flowers. — De Finod.

We remain shackled by timidity till we have learned to speak and act with propriety. — Samuel Johnson.

Avoid all haste; calmness is an essential ingredient of politeness. — Alphonse Karr.

Politeness is to goodness what words are to thoughts. — Joseph Joubert.

Life is not so short but there is always time enough for courtesy. — Emerson.

The things which now seem frivolous and slight will be of serious consequence to you after they have once made you ridiculous. — Roscommon.

The person who screams, or uses the superlative degree, or converses with heat, puts whole drawing-rooms to flight. If you wish to be loved, love measure. You must have genius or a prodigious usefulness, if you will hide the want of measure. — Emerson.

The courtesies of a small and trivial character are the ones which strike deepest to the grateful and appreciating heart. — Henry Clay.

Ungraciousness in rendering a benefit, like a hoarse voice, mars the music of the song. — Feltham.

Gentleness, cheerfulness, and urbanity are the Three Graces of manners. — Marguerite de Valois.

Good manners are made up of petty sacrifices. — Emerson.

Manners are an art. Some are perfect, some commendable, some faulty; but there are none that are of no moment. — Joubert.

It is a rule of manners to avoid exaggeration. — Emerson.

Politeness goes far, yet costs nothing. — Smiles.

The truest politeness comes of sincerity. — Smiles.

Kind nature is the best; those manners next
That fit us like a nature second-hand;
Which are indeed the manners of the great. — Tennyson.

Politeness consists in a due regard for the rights and feelings of others, and for the customs of the people among whom one is placed.

## Lesson 67.

### GENDER.

**Gender is the distinction of nouns and pronouns with regard to sex.**

The gender of the noun shows whether we are speaking of male beings, female beings, or things without life.

Nouns are of the masculine gender when they denote male beings; as, man, boy, lion.

Nouns are of the feminine gender when they denote female beings; as, woman, girl, lioness.

Nouns are of common gender when they denote either males or females; as, parent, teacher, child, pupil.

When words of common gender are used, they are to be considered masculine unless it is plain that they are feminine; as, —

Every person is the architect of *his* own fortune.

Nouns are of the neuter gender when they denote things without life; as, stone, tree, table.

Nouns are of the neuter gender when they denote living objects whose sex is not considered; as, bird, fish, insect.

We might say, "That is a pretty babe. Do you love it?" Here the sex of the child is not considered.

Things without life, and properly of the neuter gender, are sometimes spoken of as though having life and sex; as, —

The ship carries *her* pennant proudly.
The sun sends *his* rays to the earth.

Sex refers to living beings only; gender applies only to nouns and pronouns. There are two sexes, but four genders.

## Lesson 68.

### LETTERS OF INTRODUCTION.

A letter of introduction is one in which the writer introduces a friend or an acquaintance to another. Such a letter is intended to be carried by the person introduced, and should never be sealed. On the lower left hand corner of the envelope should be written the word "Introducing," with the name of the person introduced.

Copy the following short letter of introduction: —

21 Euclid Ave., Cleveland, Ohio,
*Sept.* 9, 1878.

Mrs. E. L. Mason,
Omaha, Kansas.

My dear Friend, —

It is with much pleasure that I introduce to you Miss Marion Westfall, a friend of whom you have often heard me speak.

Miss Westfall is intending to spend the winter in your city, and any kindness that you can show her during her stay will be most gratefully appreciated by

Your sincere friend,
Josephine R. Gould.

Write a letter introducing a friend of yours to a cousin.

Write a letter introducing a young musician to a music teacher in Dresden, Germany.

## Lesson 69.

### GOOD MANNERS.

Write two rules for polite conduct at the table, at a lecture, when making a visit, in a store.

## Lesson 70.

### DESCRIPTION.

In Lesson 48 you were directed to write a description of the bear. Your description was probably very different from this which follows, and perhaps quite as good. Compare the two descriptions, and see if you cannot now write a description better than either.

#### The Bear.

The bear is a large, heavy-looking beast, with a thick coat of long, soft, shaggy hair. He is very strong, and, although clumsy in form, can climb trees and swim with ease and skill.

Bears are either brown, black, or white.

The white, or polar bear, lives in the cold north. There the ground is ever covered with snow, and the sea is full of ice, even in June and July. Bruin's thick fur coat, however, keeps him warm, and the sharp air, without making him uncomfortable, gives him a good appetite. So he is quite at home where any other beast would die of hunger and cold.

He can swim in the water as well as he can walk on the land. He can float like a duck, or dive like a fish. His feet never slip on the smooth ice, for they are covered with long hair.

Sometimes he finds a seal asleep on the ice, or dashes after one into the water. Sometimes he dives after fish and catches them, swift though they are. The body of a dead whale serves him as food for a long time. When seal, or fish, or dead whale are not to be had, the bear dines on berries or even seaweed, if he can get nothing better.

It is said that bears never attack man if they can help it. But when angry they are very fierce. Rising on their hind legs, they hug the victim with their fore-paws.

The bear is in many ways of use to man. Many articles of dress are made from the skin and fur. The flesh is good for food, and the fat is used instead of oil.

## Lesson 71.

### GENDER.

There are three ways of indicating the gender of nouns: —

1. By the use of different words.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Masculine. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| boy | girl | sir | madam |
| king | queen | wizard | witch |
| monk | nun | horse | mare |

2. By changing the termination.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Masculine. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| actor | actress | hero | heroine. |
| administrator | administratrix | czar | czarina |
| duke | duchess | lion | lioness |

3. By joining a distinguishing word.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Masculine. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mr. Brown | Mrs. Brown | he-goat | she-goat |
| man-servant | maid-servant | buck-rabbit | doe-rabbit |

Name the gender of each word in the following list, and explain in what way the gender is indicated: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bachelor | maid | master | mistress |
| nephew | niece | mesdames | messieurs |
| Jew | Jewess | empress | emperor |
| grandson | granddaughter | patroness | patron |
| husband | wife | lad | lass |
| male-child | female-child | belle | beau |
| benefactress | benefactor | host | hostess |
| bride | bridegroom | brother-in-law | sister-in-law |

## Lesson 72.

### CASE.—NOMINATIVE CASE.

**The form or use of a noun or pronoun which shows its relation to other words is called its case.**

Nouns and pronouns have three cases; nominative, possessive, and objective.

**A noun or pronoun used as the subject of a verb is in the nominative case.**

**A noun or pronoun used as the complement of an intransitive verb is in the nominative case.**

Wallace is a good scholar.

*Wallace* is the subject of the verb *is*, and *scholar* is the complement of the same verb; both are in the nominative case.

**When a noun denotes the person or thing addressed it is in the nominative case; as,—**

Harold, what is the number of the page?

All the nouns and pronouns in the sentences below are in the nominative case. Tell which of the rules above applies to each.

My dear Walter, Jack is doing very well.
Rhetoric is an interesting study.
The sun, moon, planets, and stars are not stationary.
When quiet is restored, I will go on.
Plato, thou reasonest well.
This is too severe a storm, Wilbur, to last long.
What is your name, my brave little man?
Because a mist arose, the sport was ended.
The wave is mighty, but the spray is weak.
The whole sky was a shadowless blue.
An old maxim says "Honesty is the best policy."

## Lesson 73.

### LETTERS OF RECOMMENDATION.

Copy this letter: —

PORTLAND, ME., *June* 14, 1883.

TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN: —

The bearer, Kate Stafford, has been in my employ for the last five years, and I take pleasure in testifying to her honesty, faithfulness, and efficiency in general housework. She is a good washer and ironer, and is neat and careful in all her work. I willingly recommend her to any one in want of her services.

MRS. J. L. BENSON.

Write a letter of recommendation for a girl who has been in the employment of a certain firm as saleswoman.

Arthur Harrison has been book-keeper for Smith, Pratt & Co., in Brooklyn, but is obliged to leave and go West on account of his health. Write the letter of recommendation which he might receive from his employers.

[Letters of recommendation should not be sealed.]

## Lesson 74.

### DESCRIPTION. — THE GRASSHOPPER.

With a grasshopper before you, answer these questions: —

What is the shape of a grasshopper's body? What is its length? What are its divisions?

What is the shape of the head? What parts does it have?

What is the shape of the thorax? What marks are there upon it? What are attached to the thorax?

How does the tail compare in length with the other parts? In size? What divisions has the tail?

Where are the breathing-holes?

Where are the feelers? What is their size? Shape? Use?

How many jaws has the grasshopper? How do they move?

How many legs has it? What is their size? How many joints have they? What is the shape of the feet?

How many wings has it? What is their size? How do they differ? What parts have they?

## Lesson 75.

### APPOSITION.

Peter the Hermit preached the first crusade.

Here *hermit* tells which *Peter* preached the first crusade, and is joined to *Peter* for explanation.

**A noun or pronoun joined to another noun or pronoun to explain it is said to be in apposition with the word to which it is joined, and is in the same case; as, —**

Mr. Smith, the *tinsmith*, is my neighbor.

The River *St. Lawrence* rises in Lake Ontario.

A noun in apposition is sometimes united to the noun which it modifies by *or* or *as;* as, —

Peru, or the land of the Incas, is a South American State.

Industry, as the conqueror of difficulties, has no equal.

Supply words in apposition with the following nouns: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mr. Brown | The Hudson | Thomas | Shakspeare |
| Joan of Arc | Henry VIII. | London | Africa |

Tell the trades or professions of several persons by means of nouns in apposition.

## Lesson 76.

### PUNCTUATION.—NOUNS IN APPOSITION.

*A noun in apposition with another noun should be set off by commas, unless both nouns are necessary to form the name.*

*A noun and a pronoun in apposition should not be separated by a comma.*

This rule includes nouns in apposition which are preceded by *or* or *as*.

A title or a degree, following the name of a person, is a noun in apposition, and should be separated from the name by a comma.

Punctuate these sentences: —

Brussels the capital of Belgium is noted for its manufactures of carpets and laces.

We left Pitt in the zenith of prosperity and glory the ideal of England the terror of France the admiration of the whole civilized world.

Distinguish between it's the contraction of it is and its the personal pronoun.

The Naval Academy an academy similar to the Military Academy is located at Annapolis Md.

The selectmen or trustees as they are called in some states have the general charge of the executive business of the town.

What different meanings will different punctuations of the following sentence give?

The party consisted of Mr. Smith a clergyman his son a lawyer Mr. Brown a Londoner his wife and a little child.

## Lesson 77.

### GOOD MANNERS.

A young friend wishes to know what he should do with his hat, overcoat, umbrella, and gloves, when making a call; when he should precede a lady; and how he should give introductions. Write a set of directions for him upon these questions of polite conduct.

## Lesson 78.

### ANALYSIS. — WORDS IN APPOSITION.

Analyze the following sentences, as directed on page 49: —

1. John the coachman was hurt. 2. Mr. Smith, the carpenter, may be living. 3. Paul the apostle had been imprisoned. 4. Henry, the scholar, was crowned king. 5. Our country's sixteenth president, Abraham Lincoln, is considered a martyr. 6. You did it yourself. 7. Your brothers, Thomas and Henry, were seen. 8. My brother Philip's eldest son lived a hermit. 9. The reading-room is well furnished with periodicals, — quarterlies, monthlies, weeklies, and dailies. 10. Pride, that never-failing vice of fools, is not easily defined. 11. The letter *o* is a vowel. 12. The word *athwart* is a preposition.

A noun in apposition may be marked as an adjective element with the letters *ap* above the line; as, —

*ap*
John the coachman was hurt.

## Lesson 79.

### LETTER-WRITING.

Harlan Endicott is obliged to leave school to engage in business, and desires a testimonial from his teacher as to his character and ability. Write his request for this favor.

Write a very favorable testimonial from the teacher in answer to the foregoing request.

Write the teacher's note to Harlan Endicott, in which she explains why she must refuse to give a favorable testimonial.

## Lesson 80.

### DESCRIPTION. — BUTTERFLY.

Write a description of the butterfly. See page 68.

## Lesson 81.

### POSSESSIVE CASE.

**The form of the noun which denotes possession is called the possessive form, or possessive case; as, —**

*Ruth's* book is new.

*The possessive case is formed from the nominative by the addition of* 's. *If the noun is plural, and ends in* s, *the apostrophe only is added.*

The *s* is sometimes omitted in singular nouns when its pronunciation would occasion an unpleasant succession of sounds; as, for conscience' sake.

The idea of ownership is often expressed by a phrase introduced by the preposition *of;* as, —

The palace of the queen.

Besides the idea of ownership or possession, the possessive case is used to denote source or origin, kind and measure; as, —

| | |
|---|---|
| the river's brink, | the sun's rays, |
| Solomon's temple, | children's shoes, |
| a week's time, | a pound's weight. |

When joint ownership is indicated, the sign of possession is affixed to the last name only; as, —

Mason and Dixon's line.

When the ownership is separate, the sign is affixed to each name; as, —

Look in Webster's and Worcester's dictionaries.

In the phrase "The Queen of England's domains," *Queen* is a noun in the possessive case, but the sign of possession is joined to the word *England* because *Queen of England* is used as a compound noun.

If two nouns denoting possession are in apposition, the sign of possession is affixed to the last one only; as, —

For David my servant's sake.

Give the possessive singular of —

man, child, somebody else, James, Miss Harris, Mrs. Adams.

Give the possessive plural of —

mercy, German, child, deer, buffalo, sheep, mouse, sister-in-law, man-servant.

Make a list of ten plurals that end in *s*. Use each of these plurals in the possessive form in an appropriate sentence.

Make a list of ten plurals not ending in *s*, and use each in a similar way.

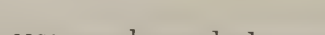
## Lesson 82.

### ANALYSIS. — POSSESSIVE CASE.

Analyze the following sentences as directed on page 49:

1. William's father will come. 2. His old horse was walking. 3. The English sailor's hat might have been lost. 4. My brother-in-law's residence is palatial. 5. Boston is Dr. Franklin's native place. 6. Providence was Roger William's home. 7. Your opportunities are excellent. 8. Morning's golden light is breaking. 9. Charles's drawing is admired. 10. The old man's hearing is good. 11. The Duke of Wellington's grave was seen.

The possessive case may be marked as an adjective element. The sign of possession will distinguish it sufficiently from the adjective.



## Lesson 83.

### TELEGRAMS.

A telegram should be brief, clear, and definite. No unnecessary words should be used.

Copy the following telegram: —

HACKETTSTOWN, N.J., *Dec.* 8, 1889.

Mrs. H. S. SINCLAIR,
47 Wayne St.,
New Bedford, Mass.

Missed train. Shall arrive at 8.30 P.M.

H. S. SINCLAIR.

Write the following telegrams in the fewest words possible: —

BALTIMORE, MD., *Aug.* 5, 1882.

E. H. TURNER, Camden, Maine.

I will telegraph you Monday when you may expect me. Am unable to travel now. Am suffering from a sprained ankle. If I do not telegraph you on Monday, do not expect me before another week.

J. W. BLAKE.

ALBANY, N.Y., *June* 10, 1885.

H. M. RICH,
Board of Trade Building,
Philadelphia, Pa.

Do as you think best regarding Jones. Shall we accept the notes of Harland, Marsh & Co.? You know their condition. Let us know at once. Have no advice to offer regarding Jones. To what extent shall we trust Harland, Marsh & Co.?

E. F. MCWHIRTER.

## Lesson 84.

### MANNERS AT TABLE.

Think what answers you would give to these questions, and then write an article of advice about Manners at the Table.

What preparations should you make before coming to the table, as regards your hair, face, hands, nails?

When should you be seated?

Where should you place your napkin?

What advice can you give about leaning over the table, putting elbows upon the table, fingering napkin-ring or other articles while waiting to be served, keeping the mouth shut while eating, eating hastily or noisily?

For what should the knife be used? For what should it not be used?

How should the fork be used?

For what should a spoon be used? How should soup be eaten?

What can you say about leaving the spoon in your cup when drinking, about drinking from a saucer, about blowing upon tea or coffee to cool it, about tilting a soup-plate to get the last spoonful?

How should a slice of bread be eaten?

What should you say when accepting or refusing anything that is passed you?

How should you ask for anything?

How should guests be treated at your table?

How should a pitcher or an article with a handle be passed to others?

If you are waiting upon a table, at which side of those seated should dishes be passed?

What should be done in case of an accident, such as spilling a glass of water?

What topics of conversation should be avoided at table?

Where should knife and fork be placed after you have finished eating?

What can you say about the use of a toothpick at table?

When should you leave the table?

If you wish to leave before the others, what should you say, and to whom should you say it?

## Lesson 85.

### OBJECTIVE CASE.

**A noun or a pronoun used as the object of a verb is in the objective case; as, —**

Edison invented the *phonograph.*

Intransitive verbs may take after them an object kindred in meaning to the verb; as, —

He dreams a dream.
He sleeps the sleep of death.
Let us live a life of faith.
They danced a minuet.
They played a losing game.

**A noun or a pronoun used with a preposition to form a phrase is called the object of the preposition, and is in the objective case; as, —**

After the war. Before the magistrate.

Tell the construction of the nouns and pronouns in the following paragraph: —

By the side of a pond a company of idle boys were watching

some frogs, and were pelting them with stones whenever they lifted their heads above the water. A frog finally said to them, "It may be fine sport for you to cast stones, but you forget that it is death to us."

## Lesson 86.

### ANALYSIS. — OBJECTIVE ELEMENTS.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. We saw John. 2. He will shut this door. 3. Who opened it? 4. They may take a ride. 5. Whom did you see? 6. Stephen's younger brother has had the old gentleman's spectacles. 7. Bring that book. 8. Who has been using this? 9. See that rocket. 10. We could hear an unusual noise. 11. Take that. 12. Our little party could hear the singing birds. 13. He gave up the chase. 14. I like that ring, that ancient ring. 15. The boy flew his kite. 16. The farmer grows grain. 17. They ran a race. 18. He trotted his horse. 19. The boy walked the horse. 20. They will run the boat.

## Lesson 87.

### DESCRIPTIONS. — THE MOTH.

Write a description of the moth according to the directions given on page 68.

Compare the moth and the butterfly.

## Lesson 88.

### SYNONYMS.

Look in the dictionary for the exact meaning of these words, then select the right ones to fill the blanks in the sentences which follow: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| awkward, | neglect, | universal, |
| clumsy, | negligence, | general. |

The speaker was very —— in his appearance and —— in his manner.

Many girls who are by no means ——, have an —— gait.

I assure you that such —— shall never happen again.

The accident was due to the —— of the switchman, who had hitherto been most careful in his duties.

Do not place too much confidence in him, for he is noted for his ——.

There is no exception to the —— devastation along the river, and poverty is —— throughout the afflicted region.

## Lesson 89.

### CASE AND GENDER.

Tell the case and the gender of each noun in the following sentences: —

The way was long, the wind was cold.
The minstrel was infirm and old.

The child is father of the man.

Honesty is the best policy.

The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast,
And the woods against a stormy sky
Their giant branches tossed.

We shall take a walk in the morning.

No young lady could have a better safeguard against adversities of fortune, or a better resource in time of need, than a good knowledge of business affairs.

The fly sat on the axle-tree of the chariot-wheel and said, "What a dust I do raise!"

## Lesson 90.

### NATURAL ORDER OF WORDS.

1. The boy gains friends.

In this sentence the order of the words is subject, verb, object. This is the common order.

2. The polite boy gains many friends.

What is the order of this sentence? Where are the adjectives placed?

3. The polite boy of good character will readily find friends at all times.

In this sentence where is the adjective phrase placed? Where is the adverb placed? The adverbial phrase? Which is nearer the verb, the adverb or the adverbial phrase?

Sentences 1, 2, and 3 are written in the natural, or usual, order of declarative sentences.

Which comes first in the usual order of declarative sentences, subject or predicate? What adjective modifiers

come before the noun which they modify? What adjective modifiers come after the noun which they modify? In what order are the modifiers of the verb placed?

All complements of verbs are usually placed directly after them.

In imperative sentences the subject is omitted, or it follows the verb; as, Come. Stand up. Love ye the Lord. Be it enacted.

## Lesson 91.

### ANALYSIS. — ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS.

Analyze the following sentences as directed on page 49: —

1. The sun shone brightly. 2. Will he return immediately? 3. They have gone away. 4. March on. 5. He was very ill. 6. Where has he gone? 7. Their trees were growing rather slowly. 8. The old house still remains. 9. The horse stood quite still. 10. The young birds were very much frightened. 11. Flowers were peeping out everywhere. 12. The slothful seldom respect themselves. 13. The Israelites passed over safely. 14. France was formerly called Gaul. 15. He received us somewhat formally. 16. I will see him again. 17. The various animals of the farmyard, horses, cows, and sheep, live peaceably together. 18. McPherson returned home an altered man.

An adverbial element may be indicated by drawing a line beneath it.

The various animals of the farmyard, horses, cows, and sheep, live peaceably together.

*ap* *ap* *ap*

## Lesson 92.

### TELEGRAMS.

Write a business telegram containing not more than ten words.

Write a telegram ordering a stateroom on a certain steamer for a certain date.

Write a telegram to a firm in New York City inquiring why certain goods have not been forwarded.

Write a telegram in answer to the last.

## Lesson 93.

### DESCRIPTION. — THE HOUSE-FLY.

Write a description of the house-fly, as directed on page 68.

## Lesson 94.

### DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS.

1. We paid him.
2. We paid his wages.

Each of these sentences seems complete in itself. We may combine them and say, —

3. We paid him his wages.
4. We paid his wages to him.

In the first sentence *him* completes the meaning of the

verb *paid*, and is hence its complement; in the second sentence *wages* is the complement of *paid;* in the third sentence *him* and *wages* are both the complements of *paid;* but in the fourth sentence *wages* is the only complement of *paid.* The meanings of the third and of the fourth sentence are the same, but the construction of the word *him* in the two sentences is different. In the third sentence and also in the first sentence *him* is in the objective case because it is a complement of paid.

**A complement which shows that upon which an act is performed is called the direct object; a complement which shows to or for whom or what an act is done is called an indirect object.**

Which of the complements in the four sentences at the head of this lesson are direct objects? Which are indirect?

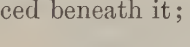
## Lesson 95.

### ANALYSIS. — INDIRECT OBJECTS.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. He brought me a knife. 2. I sold her a book. 3. She brought her brother an apple. 4. He asked me a question. 5. I told him a story. 6. He asked me a favor. 7. We pay him his wages. 8. Anthony offered Cæsar the crown. 9. Aristotle taught Alexander the Great philosophy.

An indirect object may be marked as a complement and the letters *i.o.* placed beneath it; as, —



## Lesson 96.

### NATURAL ORDER OF WORDS.

In which of the following sentences are the words in the natural order? Write in the natural order those sentences not already so written.

1. The poor bird has broken its wing.
2. The rattlesnake is the most poisonous snake in this country.
3. In shady nooks you will find the modest violet.
4. Of cotton, calico is made; of flax, linen; of rags, wood, or straw, paper is made.
5. A large carriage containing four ladies was slowly driven up the roadway.
6. Above, the sun shone forth brightly, but underneath were still to be seen the effects of the recent storm.
7. One thing I greatly admire in him.
8. Happy is the man that findeth wisdom.
9. To Robinson Crusoe many things strange and unusual happened.

## Lesson 97.

### ADVERTISEMENTS.

Copy the following advertisements: —

WANTED — An experienced girl to do general housework in a large family; must be a good washer and ironer. Good wages. Apply at No. 17 Lafayette St.

WANTED — A young man in a commission house. Address in own handwriting, giving references, Box 378, City.

A young man twenty years old desires to obtain a position as clerk or assistant book-keeper. He has had one year's experience, and can give very good references. He hopes to procure such a position by advertising. Write his advertisement.

A retail merchant desires to secure as cashier in his store a young man who is a good penman. He is very particular about the character of the one whom he may employ. Write his advertisement for a cashier.

Mrs. F. W. Smith is a dressmaker who wishes to obtain several sewing-girls. She will teach them the art of dressmaking in return for their services. Write her advertisement.

A girl wants a place to do general housework. She objects to washing and ironing, but is willing to go into the country. Write her advertisement.

## Lesson 98.

### OBJECTIVE CASE.

In the following sentences name the nouns and pronouns which are the direct objects of verbs, and those which are the indirect objects: —

They handed the driver a whip.
We will send you an invitation.
Are you telling me the truth?
He told me this story.
He offered her his hand.
Are you telling the truth to me?
You may ask him some questions.

Use each of the following verbs in a sentence containing a direct and an indirect object. State which is the direct object and which is the indirect: —

allow, bring, buy, carry, do, get, give, lend, make, offer, present, promise, provide, refuse, send, show, tell, write.

## Lesson 99.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not use: —

*lots of* for *many*, *any* for *at all*,
*it transpired* for *it happened*, *party* for *person*,
*clever* for *good-natured*, *except* for *unless*,
*aggravate* for *vex* or *annoy*.

Two diminutives should not be used together. Do not say "little brooklet."

Two negatives should not be used for one. Do not say, "She didn't say nothing." Two negatives make an affirmative.

Copy these sentences, selecting the right word or phrase from those in brackets: —

I attended the lecture, but was unable to hear [any, at all].
She cannot see [at all, any].
A strange thing [transpired, happened].
I agreed to meet a certain [person, party] in town.
I visited the Louvre [lots of, many] times while in Paris.
She is not capable, but very [clever, good-natured].
Happiness is not complete [unless, except] it is shared with another.

This event [happened, transpired] soon after my arrival.

I have corrected [many, lots of] mistakes in this essay.

This is the [party, person] to whom I sold my house.

A man will never be what he ought to be [except, unless] he knows what he is.

He always [aggravated, provoked] me by his manner.

It was exceedingly [aggravating, provoking] to see the train leave the station just as we arrived.

I never was more [annoyed, aggravated].

A drenching rain [aggravated, provoked] our discomfort.

## Lesson 100.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The spider. The bee.

## Lesson 101.

### ADVERBIAL USE OF NOUNS.

A noun has sometimes an adverbial use.

1. He came here.
2. He came home.
3. He came early.
4. He came this morning.
5. The river is very wide.
6. The river is a mile wide.

In the first sentence, *here* is an adverb telling where he came. In the second sentence, the noun *home*, standing for the phrase *to his home*, likewise tells where he came, and is used as an adverbial element. In the fourth sen-

tence, *morning* is an adverbial element, modifying *came*. In the sixth sentence, the noun *mile* has the same use that the adverb *very* has in the fifth. It is a modifier of *wide*, and hence is used as an adverb.

*A noun used as an adverb is in the objective case.*

Find the adverbial elements in the following sentences:—

This morning James shovelled through a snow-drift six feet high.

He skated a mile in ten minutes.

They sat still an hour.

This road is a mile longer than that.

You must get to school ten minutes earlier to-morrow morning, or I shall keep you fifteen minutes later at night.

I don't care a penny for his opinion.

I have come a long distance to see you, and intend to remain all the afternoon.

You will do a great deal better than most scholars if you find all these adverbial objectives.

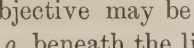
## Lesson 102.

### ANALYSIS.—ADVERBIAL OBJECTIVE.

Analyze the following sentences and parse the nouns:—

1. We waited ten days. 2. The book is worth a dollar. 3. We rode fifty miles that day. 4. We were a little tired. 5. What! could ye not watch with me one hour? 6. He gave his father a house two stories high, and was not a penny the poorer for it. 7. They walked north twenty miles the first day.

An adverbial objective may be marked as a complement with the letters *a.o.* beneath the line.




## Lesson 103.

### INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

Sentences are made interrogative by the arrangement of the words, or by the use of interrogative words.

Interrogative words are adjectives, pronouns, or adverbs.

The interrogative adjectives are *which*, *whose*, and *what;* the interrogative pronouns are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, and *what;* the interrogative adverbs are *when*, *where*, *why*, *wherefore*, *how*, etc.

In sentences made interrogative by the arrangement of the words, or by an interrogative adverb, the subject follows the verb or the first word of the verb-phrase; as, —

> Do not they think too little who talk too much?
> Have I done aught of value to my fellow-men?
> Where was Washington Irving born?
> How old was Longfellow when he died?

This order is called the interrogative order.

If the question is asked by means of an interrogative pronoun or adjective, either the natural or the interrogative order may be followed; as, —

> What is vanity? What have you done?
> What planter will yoke a sapling with a falling oak?

Copy from your Reader two sentences made interrogative by the arrangement of the words, two sentences which begin with an interrogative adverb, two which begin with an interrogative pronoun, and two which begin with an interrogative adjective.

Study the sentences that you have selected, and tell the position of the subject in each. Which sentences have the natural order? Which have the interrogative order?

## Lesson 104.

### MANNERS AT SCHOOL.

Think what answers you would give to these questions, and then write an article of advice about Polite Manners at School.

Should good manners be shown in a parlor more than in a school-room?

What should you say when you first see your teacher before school, and upon leaving if you stop to speak with her after school is dismissed?

Is it polite to address your teacher as "Teacher"?

What is your opinion of a scholar who is untidy in his appearance?

Is it polite to lounge in your seat? How should you stand? If asked to distribute materials to a class, how should it be done?

How should your books be treated?

How should the school grounds, the building, the furniture be kept?

When you are obliged to pass in front of your teacher what should you say?

What impolite acts in school do you often notice?

How should you treat a new scholar?

What should you say for any favor that is shown you? [Never say "Thanks."]

## Lesson 105.

### MODIFYING COMPLEMENTS.

They made him captain. They made him unhappy.

In each of these sentences the verb *made* requires two complements to make its use as a predicate complete; one expressed by the word *him*, denoting the person acted upon; the other expressed by the words *captain*, *unhappy*, denoting the result of the action expressed by *made*.

These words, *captain* and *unhappy*, express some condition of *him*. *Captain* is a modifying noun; that is, in apposition with *him; unhappy* is an adjective modifying *him*. These modifiers of *him*, which is the direct object of the verb *made*, are also complements of the same verb.

Observe that there are two sets of double complements, direct and indirect, and direct and modifying.

They made him a boat.
They made him a scholar.

The act of making expressed by *made* in the first sentence was upon the *boat: boat* is the direct object, and *him* the indirect object, showing for whom the act was done.

The act expressed by *made* in the second sentence was upon *him*, which is the direct object, while *scholar* is the modifying object.

## Lesson 106.

### ADVERTISEMENTS.

A man wants a position as travelling salesman. He has had fifteen years' experience in this work, and can furnish many references. He would prefer to travel for some manufacturing house. Write his advertisement.

A child has been lost. Write an advertisement stating circumstances and describing the child.

Prepare an advertisement announcing a special sale of goods at greatly reduced rates.

Annie Price has found a valuable piece of lace. Write her notice of this for the paper.

Look at the advertisements in some newspaper, and copy two which you think are well written.

## Lesson 107.

### INTRODUCTORY WORDS.

Almost any change in the natural order of a sentence emphasizes some element of the sentence. There are, however, two changes in the natural order so common that they simply give variety, and not emphasis. These changes consist in the use of the introductory words *there* and *it*.

When a sentence begins with *there* used as an introductory word, the verb precedes its subject; as, —

There arose a shrill cry.
There was no report made of the matter.

The order of almost any declarative sentence may be changed by placing *there* at the beginning.

The pronoun *it* may also be used to introduce a sentence; as, —

It is the love of money that is the root of all evil.

The real subject then follows the verb, and is considered to be in apposition with *it*.

Change the order of the following sentences by prefixing the word *there* or *it* : —

No clouds were to be seen. A flash of lightning came. To be misjudged is often the fate of genius. No vacant chairs were in the room. To have good laws is useless if we have not good men to execute them. Evils are of two kinds, — those which cannot be cured, and those which can. Not to store the mind with knowledge, but to give activity and vigor to its powers, is the great object of education. Upon the other side of the wide Atlantic a beautiful island lies. That we are never too old to learn is a true saying.

## Lesson 108.

### CASE OF PRONOUNS. — A COMMON ERROR.

They are coming to see me. This book is for me.
Let me try to do it. They came on behind me.
Let me go to speak to him. I went to town yesterday.

He spoke to me.

Copy each of these sentences, and before the word *me* or *I* insert the words *William and*.

They are coming to see William and me.

If you write this sentence, "They are coming to see William and I," you make as great a mistake as to say,

"They are coming to see I." Observe that other words joined to a pronoun by *and* do not in any wise change the form or use of the pronoun.

Fill the blanks in these sentences with a noun and a pronoun connected by *and*: —

I wish you would come with ——.
—— were the ones selected.
It was done by ——
Did you ever see ——?
—— live near Lake Michigan.
—— have started for Oregon.
She said it was given to ——.
He thought there was some secret between ——.
—— are great friends.
It made —— quite provoked.

## Lesson 109.

### ANALYSIS. — ADJECTIVE PHRASES.

Analyze the following sentences as directed on page 49: —

1. Tints of beauty paint the sky. 2. The time for studying is past. 3. The love of money is the root of all evil. 4. The inhabitants of Finland are called Finns. 5. The acorn of small size becomes a giant oak. 6. The brother of Richard the king usurped the throne. 7. The house under the hill was burned. 8. Every person but him had deserted the ship.

A phrase may be marked as an adjective element or an adverbial element, according to its use. That the element is a phrase is shown sufficiently by the line connecting the words together as a single element.

## Lesson 110.

### DESCRIPTION.

Another form for the description of animals is given in the outline below.

1. What kind of animal is it?
2. With what is it covered?
3. What are the parts of its body?
4. Where does it live?
5. What is its nature?
6. What does it do?
7. Upon what does it live?
8. Of what use or harm is it?

NOTE. — Question 2 may include the appearance of the animal, 6 its habits, and some incident or reflection may be added at the close.

See how this outline is used in the following description: —

#### THE SQUIRREL.

The squirrel is a rodent. He is covered with a soft coat of fur, gray or reddish brown in color.

The long, bushy tail which makes the squirrel look so pretty is longer than his body, and the squirrel uses it to balance himself and to guide him in leaping.

Each fore foot has four toes, while each hind foot has five. The toes are furnished with sharp, hooked claws. The squirrel has strong, sharp teeth, whiskers, pretty, bright eyes, and long, pointed ears.

The squirrel lives in the woods and spends most of his time in the trees, leaping from limb to limb and from tree to tree

with great agility. He is very nimble, lively, playful, and pert, but also very timid, and very skilful in hiding on the appearance of danger.

In the fork of a tree, high up from the ground, he builds his nest of moss, twigs, and dry leaves.

His food consists of nuts, berries, fruits, and the young shoots of trees. He always lays by, in holes in the ground, a hoard of nuts for his winter's food.

The squirrel is useful because he destroys the larvæ of insects, but he sometimes does much harm by devouring corn and other grains, and by gnawing off the top shoots of trees.

## Lesson 111.

### NEWSPAPER ARTICLES.

#### Burglary.

Last night the residence of Mr. William Robinson at No. 37 Atwell's Ave., was visited by a burglar, who gained an entrance through a window in the rear of the house.

Finish this article by describing the circumstances. State that a suspicious-looking character was seen by a neighbor, lurking in the alley back of Mr. Robinson's house, and describe his appearance so closely that the police will have no difficulty in identifying him.

Write an account of a runaway accident. State when it occurred, who were in the carriage, why the horse took fright, through what streets he ran, and how he was finally stopped. Tell what damage was done. Relate some exciting incident of the adventure, giving due credit to any one who showed courage or presence of mind.

## Lesson 112.

### PERSON OF NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

You may recite your lesson.
I shall dismiss you soon.
We think he should speak more distinctly.
She reads her book. He gave it to her.
They brought their skates with them.
He says it is his, and I say it is mine.

Which of the pronouns in the illustrative sentences refer to the person speaking? Which refer to the person spoken to? Which nouns and which pronouns refer to the person or thing spoken of?

**Pronouns which represent the speaker are of the first person, those which represent the person or persons spoken to are of the second person, and those which represent what is spoken of are of the third person.**

**Pronouns which show by their form of what person they are, are called personal pronouns.**

Which of the pronouns in the illustrative sentences are of the first person? Which are of the second person? Which are of the third person?

Every pronoun must be of the same person, number, and gender as its antecedent.

A noun is of the first person when it is in apposition with a pronoun of the first person; as, —

I, *Maurice,* am ready to recite.
We *boys* are going skating after school.

A noun is of the second person —

1. When it is in apposition with a pronoun of the second person; as, —

We will bring you *girls* something this afternoon.
Ye *crags* and *peaks*, I'm with you once again.

2. When it names the person spoken to; as, —

Eunice, come here.

In all other uses, nouns are of the third person.

Tell the person, number, and gender of each pronoun and noun in the following sentences: —

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, to establish justice, to insure domestic tranquillity, to provide for the common defence, to promote the general welfare, and to secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

Rouse ye, Romans; rouse ye, slaves!

We, the pupils of the first division, have only one session each day.

## Lesson 113.

### DESCRIPTION.

Write a description of: —

The partridge. The woodpecker. The swan.
The ostrich. The robin.

Write descriptions of those birds only of which you can find good specimens or good pictures.

## Lesson 114.

### SYNONYMS.

Fill each blank in this lesson with the right word from this list: —

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| crowd | herd | drove | shoal | flock |
| swarm | gang | crew | band | company |

A —— of fish had surrounded the ship.

There was too great a —— of people for comfort.

A —— of cattle now grazes where the house once stood.

The —— of bees alighted upon the nearest bough.

There was a —— of thieves among the —— of travellers.

The horse was so badly frightened by a —— of swine that it became unmanageable.

He fired into a —— of wild pigeons and killed many of them.

There was a —— of robbers awaiting the train.

A —— of wild horses roamed over the prairies.

Beneath, a —— of silver fishes glides.

A mutiny arose among the ship's ——.

How many lambs are there in this —— ?

## Lesson 115.

### ANALYSIS. — ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. We will take a walk in the morning. 2. They may have ridden through the town. 3. A treaty of peace was signed at Paris. 4. They have rushed through like a hurricane. 5. The hat may be too large for him. 6. He spoke

with the proper accent. 7. The water will be too cold for bathing. 8. In ancient times France was called Gaul. 9. The world is bright before thee. 10. Captains Clark and Henderson were wounded in the late battle.

## Lesson 116.

### NEWSPAPER ARTICLES.

Write a newspaper article telling about the improvements that have been made in your city during the past year.

Write a newspaper article praising some summer resort.

The following verdict was given at an inquest. Write it correctly.

Mr. George Binns came to death by getting strucked from the elevated train on West Broadway, on October 10th — 10.45 a.m.

We blame the Elevated R.R. not having different signals to give their working people sufficient time to retire fur enough out of danger. There shall be a loud hearing signal be given at least one block from the spot where their employees are working and the people must be instructed especially to new hands how far they must go away out of the way that they will not be catched by engine or cars.

## Lesson 117.

### MANNERS ON THE STREET.

Think what answers you would give to the following questions, and then write an article of advice about Manners on the Street.

What can you say about boisterous conduct on the street, jostling against others, eating, pointing at objects, turning and staring at persons whom you have passed, calling across the street to any one on the other side?

What are proper forms of greeting when meeting acquaintances on the street? What are improper forms?

If you wish to talk with a person whom you meet, what should you do?

Should three or four walk side by side on the street?

In meeting persons, which side of the walk should you take?

When should a gentleman precede a lady companion?

If while walking with any one, you should wish to leave, should you step in front or behind your companion to do so?

When should a gentleman lift his hat?

When should a gentleman offer a lady his arm? Should he ever take her arm?

## Lesson 118.

### COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

By adding *self* to *my*, *our*, *thy*, *your*, *him*, *her*, and *it*, and *selves* to *our*, *your*, and *them*, we obtain: —

myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

These are called compound personal pronouns, and are used in the nominative and objective cases.

Write sentences containing each of the compound personal pronouns in the nominative case. In the objective case.

## Lesson 119.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The hen. The duck. The turkey.

## Lesson 120.

### ABSTRACT. — OUTLINE. — REPRODUCTION.

An abstract is a writing containing in brief form the essential parts of a longer writing. The important ideas are retained, but the details are omitted.

An outline is expressed in words, phrases, or detached sentences; an abstract, in smooth and connected sentences.

Write an outline, an abstract, and a full reproduction of the following selection from James T. Fields' "If I Were a Boy Again," found in "Underbrush."

#### Keeping a Diary.

If I were a boy again, I would have a blank-book in which I would record, before going to bed, every day's events just as they happened to me personally. If I began by writing only two lines a day in my diary, I would start my little book, and faithfully put down what happened to interest me.

On its pages I would note down the habits of birds and of animals as I saw them; and if the horse fell ill, down should go his malady in my book, and what cured him should go there too. If the cat or the dog showed any peculiar traits, they should all be chronicled in my diary, and nothing worth recording should escape me.

## Lesson 121.

### DECLENSION.

**The variation in form of nouns and pronouns to express change in number and case is called declension.**

The declension of nouns has been given sufficiently in the directions for the formation of plurals and of the possessive case. The nominative and objective cases of nouns have the same form.

[NOTE. — The regular variations in form of the parts of speech are three: declension, comparison, and conjugation. Declension belongs to nouns and pronouns; comparison, to adjectives and adverbs; and conjugation, to verbs.]

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

| | FIRST PERSON. | | SECOND PERSON. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | *Poetic Form.* | | *Common Form.* |
| | SING. | PLU. | SING. | PLU. | SING. PLU. |
| NOM. | I | we | thou | ye | you |
| POSS. | my | our | thy | your | your |
| OBJ. | me | us | thee | ye | you |

| | THIRD PERSON. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | SING. | | | PLU. |
| NOM. | he | she | it | they |
| POSS. | his | her | its | their |
| OBJ. | him | her | it | them |

With the exception of *his*, the possessive forms given in the table have an adjective use only; *i.e.*, they are used only as modifiers of nouns. *His* is used both as an adjective and as a pronoun.

*Mine*, *ours*, *thine*, *yours*, *hers*, and *theirs* are additional forms implying possession, but used as pronouns in the nominative and objective cases.

## Lesson 122.

### PUNCTUATION.—PARENTHETICAL EXPRESSIONS.

This is too hard.

That, too, is very difficult.

Madrid, which is the capital, lies in the central part of Spain.

The interior of Mexico consists of lofty mountain ranges and high plains, called table-lands, lying between them.

The peninsula of Alaska, which is a part of the United States, is inhabited by Indians.

Read each sentence at the head of this lesson, omitting the part set off by commas. Does each sentence seem complete without the part omitted? The parts set off by commas in these sentences may be called parenthetical.

Parenthetical expressions are those not essential to the meaning nor to the structure of the sentence in which they stand. They are independent expressions or modifying elements loosely connected to the words which they modify.

*Parenthetical expressions should be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or commas.*

To which commas in this lesson will this rule apply?

Write from dictation the illustrative sentences, and apply the rule just given.

The following expressions are frequently used parenthetically: —

Accordingly, too, also, consequently, finally, however, indeed, moreover, namely, perhaps, undoubtedly, in fact, in short, in reality, of course, in a word, without doubt, to be sure, as it were, as a matter of course, generally speaking.

## Lesson 123.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The dove. The canary. The sparrow.

## Lesson 124.

### NARRATION.

THE REED AND THE OAK.

Write an imaginary conversation between a little reed and a huge oak, in which the oak boasts of its superior strength.

A violent wind destroys the oak, but leaves the reed unharmed. Give the reason for this, and add the words of the reed after the wind has ceased.

## Lesson 125.

### VOICE.

**Voice is the form of the verb which shows whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action expressed by the verb.**

**If the subject of a verb represents the doer of the action, the verb is said to be in the active voice; as, —**

Maurice throws the ball.

**If the subject of a verb represents the receiver of the action, the verb is said to be in the passive voice; as, —**

The ball is thrown by Maurice.

As an intransitive verb cannot represent its subject as being acted upon, it has the form of the active voice only.

The wind carried the ship into the harbor.
The ship was borne by the wind into the harbor.
Silence does not always mark wisdom.
Wisdom is not always marked by silence.
The burden becomes light which is cheerfully borne.
Whoever looks for a friend without imperfections will never find what he seeks.
Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
How the rain falls!
Do at once what you have to do.
Have you heard the news?

Name the verbs in the sentences above. Which of them are transitive verbs in the active voice? Which are transitive verbs in the passive voice? [If any verbs are in the passive voice, you may be sure that they are transitive verbs.] Which are intransitive verbs?

## Lesson 126.

### PUNCTUATION.—WORDS IN CONTRAST.

Liberal, not lavish, is kind Nature's hand.
Intrinsic worth, and not riches, ought to produce esteem.
As thy days, so shall thy strength be.
We ought not to betray, but to defend, our country.

*Words and phrases placed in contrast to each other should be separated by a comma.*

Explain the use of the comma in the illustrative sentences.

Punctuate the following sentences: —

Elijah knew that rain was coming not by the rush of winds or gathering of clouds but by a little speck in the heavens no bigger than a man's hand.

Success is usually gained not by sudden bound but by steady effort.

He was a distinguished statesman but a bad man.

The President should be the head of the nation and not of a party.

Opportunities to be a blessing and not a curse must be employed.

Be familiar but by no means too intimate.

The one shall be taken and the other left.

## Lesson 127.

### NEWSPAPER ARTICLES.

Write for a newspaper an account of a visit made to some factory or mill.

Imagine that you have seen a railroad accident, and write an article describing it.

## Lesson 128.

### REPRODUCTION. — *See Page* 102.

#### Self-Knowledge.

If I were a boy again, one of the first things I would strive to do would be this: I would, as soon as possible, try hard to

become acquainted with and then deal honestly with myself, to study up my own deficiencies and capabilities, and I would begin early enough, before faults had time to become habits; I would seek out earnestly all the weak points in my character; and then go to work speedily and mend them with better material; if I found that I was capable of some one thing in a special degree, I would ask counsel on that point of some judicious friend, and if advised to pursue it, I would devote myself to that particular matter, to the exclusion of much that is foolishly followed in boyhood.

JAMES T. FIELDS.

## Lesson 129.

### MODE.

**The forms of the verb which show the manner in which it asserts its meaning are called modes. There are four modes: the indicative, potential, subjunctive, and imperative.**

**If a verb states a fact or asks a question in regard to a fact, it is in the indicative mode; as, —**

Genius, like humanity, rusts for want of use.
Was Charles Sumner a native of Massachusetts?

**If a verb asserts permission, power, or obligation by the use of *may, can, must, might, could, would,* or *should,* or asks a question using these words, it is in the potential mode; as, —**

We can learn wisdom from failure better than from success.

**If the verb expresses a supposition, or implies that something is untrue or is doubtful, it is in the subjunctive mood; as, —**

If it were done when 'tis done,
Then 'twere well it were done quickly.

**If the verb expresses a command or a request, it is in the imperative mode; as, —**

Never lose a chance of saying a kind word.

Write sentences illustrating each of the modes.

## Lesson 130.

### NARRATION.

HELPING EACH OTHER.

A bee fell into a stream, A bird broke off a leaf from a tree and threw it to the bee, which was thus saved. How?

A short time after, a hunter was taking aim to shoot the bird, when the bee saved the bird's life. How?

Write this out and add some thoughts which the story suggests.

## Lesson 131.

### TENSE.

1. Ralph *goes* to school every morning.
2. Ralph *went* to school this morning.
3. Ralph *will go* to school this afternoon.
4. Ralph is not at home; he *has gone* to school.
5. Ralph did not see the procession, for he *had gone* to school before it passed.
6. Ralph *will have gone* to school before nine o'clock.

The verbs italicized in these six sentences are all forms of one verb, *go*, and show by their form to what time they refer.

**The form of the verb which shows to what time it refers is called tense.**

There are three general divisions of time: present, past, and future.

The form of the verb which refers to present time is called present tense; to past time, past tense; to future time, future tense.

Tenses may also show that the act or state which they assert is completed.

The form of the verb which shows that an act or state is completed [perfect] at the present time is called the present perfect tense; at a past time, the past perfect tense; at a future time, the future perfect tense.

How many tenses are there? Name them. To what time does each refer? Which denote completed acts?

## Lesson 132.

### PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences and insert commas where needed.

Syracuse noted for its production of salt is in the central part of the state of New York.

Brooklyn on Long Island opposite New York is famous for its churches.

New Orleans sometimes called the Crescent City was once the capital of Louisiana and is the largest city in the South.

When all the words of a series are connected by *and* or some such word the commas should be omitted.

Edelweiss is a little flower something like our life-everlasting which grows underneath the snow on the high Alps its meaning is noble purity.

## Lesson 133.

### ESSAY. — RAILROADS.

Write a short essay on this subject from the following hints: —

History. — Introduce subject by referring to old stage-coach — travelling then very slow — George Stephenson — first locomotive — first railroad between Manchester and Liverpool in 1830 — first road in our country — now in every civilized land.

Construction. — Describe the line, taking notice of the bridges, viaducts, tunnels, and stations — the care necessary in construction — rails — wheels of carriages, etc.

Value and Importance. — Rapidity of travelling — comfort to dwellers in town and country — exchange of productions.

## Lesson 134.

### REPRODUCTION. — PERSEVERANCE.

If I were a boy again, I would practise perseverance oftener, and never give a thing up because it was hard or inconvenient to do it. There is no trait more valuable than a determination to persevere when the right thing is to be accomplished. We are all inclined to give up easily in trying or unpleasant situations; and the point I would establish with myself, if the choice were again within my grasp, would be never to relinquish my hold on a possible success if mortal strength or brains in my case were adequate to the occasion.

That was a capital lesson which Professor Faraday taught

one of his students in the lecture-room after some chemical experiment. The lights had been put out in the hall, and by accident some small article dropped on the floor from the professor's hand. The professor lingered behind, endeavoring to pick it up. "Never mind," said the student; "it is of no consequence to-night, sir, whether we find it or not." — "That is true," replied the professor, "but it is of grave consequence to me as a principle that I am not foiled in my determination to find it."

Perseverance can sometimes equal genius in its results. "There are only two creatures," says the Eastern proverb, "which can surmount the Pyramids, — the eagle and the snail."

JAMES T. FIELDS.

## Lesson 135.

### PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am here. | Thou art here. |
| He is here. | We are here. |

The verbs in the sentences above are in the present tense of the indicative mode. The form of the verb depends upon the person and number of its subject.

The forms and uses of the verb which show its agreement with the number and person of its subject are called the number and person of the verb.

*A verb has the same person and number as its subject.*

Tell the voice, mode, tense, person, and number of each verb in the following sentences: —

The most precious acquisition is the gaining of a friend.
Study wisdom, and you will reap pleasure.

"If we could make this country sober," said Lord Coleridge, "we could shut up nine-tenths of her prisons."

Base all your actions upon a principle of right; preserve your integrity of character, and in doing this never reckon the cost.

He who fills his heart with the truths of the poets may work them out in heroic deeds.

Be not simply good; be good for something.

If to do were as easy as to know what to do, chapels had been churches, and poor men's cottages princes' palaces.

Were we to take as much pains to be what we ought to be, as we do to disguise what we really are, we might appear like ourselves without the trouble of any disguise at all.

## Lesson 136.

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

Compare the two following stories and notice that the story of "The Two Farmers" is written in imitation of that of "The Two Goats."

#### The Two Goats.

Two goats met upon a narrow bridge which led across a deep mountain stream. They were going in opposite directions, and neither one would retreat for the other. After quarrelling for some time they began to fight, and finally, both losing their balance, they fell over into the stream below. They saved themselves only by great effort.

#### The Two Farmers.

Two farmers quarrelled about a meadow, each claiming it as his own. As they could not agree, they had a long law-suit

over the matter. At last the following verdict was rendered: "Since both have equal right to the meadow, it must be sold, and the money divided between them." This was done. The cost of the law-suit, however, was so great that the money received from the sale of the meadow was not sufficient to pay it, and each farmer had to sell his house to make up the necessary sum.

Write a story of your own that shall be in imitation of that of "The Two Goats."

## Lesson 137.

### STYLE.—EXAGGERATION.

The manner in which one expresses his thoughts by means of words is called his *style*. To write in a good style, one must express his thoughts clearly, and in such a manner as to impress and please others.

A good style in writing must, therefore, possess clearness, force, and attractiveness.

These terms, clearness, force, and attractiveness, should not be considered as entirely distinct each from the others; for whatever adds to the clearness of a sentence or paragraph adds to its force, and whatever adds to its force adds to its attractiveness. In the practical work of composition, however, whatever pains the writer takes in the selection of his words or in their arrangement is taken mainly to make his writing more clear, or more forcible, or more attractive, and for some one of these purposes more distinctly than for another. Hence, how to make his style more clear and forcible and attractive is that upon which the young writer especially needs instruction.

There is one general rule for good writing: *Put the right word in the right place.*

The right word will not express more than we mean. Such words as *awful*, *tremendous*, *stupendous*, *extremely*, *perfect*, *magnificent*, *glorious*, should not be used unless they fitly express our thoughts. Do not say, "I am tired to death," when you are merely very tired. Do not say, "It is certainly so," when you merely suppose it is so.

Improve the following sentences by making any changes you think necessary: —

I have been deluged with letters upon this subject.

It was a stupendous sight which met our eyes from the top of the building.

Miss Abbott is the most charming person that ever lived; she is simply adorable.

What has happened to make you look so supremely happy?

The crowd was so immense that it was absolutely impossible to get past the store, but I finally succeeded by superhuman efforts.

After playing a few moments in the yard the child came in, saying that she was almost frozen.

I have thought of you continually to-day; but I had an innumerable number of callers, and could not get away to see you until now.

## Lesson 138.

### REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

The present infinitive of a verb is called its root. From this root are formed the past indicative and the past participle.

These three parts of a verb are called its principal parts,

because when these parts are known the other parts can be given readily.

Regular verbs are those which form their past indicative and past participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the root; as, hope, hoped, hoped; climb, climbed, climbed.

Irregular verbs are those which do not form their past indicative and past participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the root; as, go, went, gone.

## Lesson 139.

### SYNONYMS.

Fill each blank in this lesson with the right word from this list, and tell why you use each in preference to any other: —

copy model pattern specimen sample

He carried a small —— of the machine with him, and was very successful in making sales.

Ask for —— of his best coffee.

You may make three —— of this document.

Is this the only —— of your work that you can show me?

The —— of that wall-paper is excellent though the coloring is faulty.

Here is a large quantity of ——, but we do not keep the articles in stock.

He is a great botanist and has many rare ——.

## Lesson 140.

### DESCRIPTION.

Compare this outline with the description which follows: —

AN APPLE. — OUTLINE.

1. What it is.
2. Where and how it grows.
3. Its form, size, and appearance.
4. Its parts — their form, size, and qualities.
5. How it differs from other fruit.
6. Its uses.

DESCRIPTION OF AN APPLE.

An apple is a fruit that grows on trees in temperate climates. It is nearly round, of various sizes, but usually from two to four inches in diameter, and of various hues and shades — green, yellow, russet, and red.

At one end is the stem which fastens it to the tree on which it grows; at the other, a little hollow in which are bits of leaves.

Its skin is smooth and tough. Its pulp is juicy and pleasant to the taste. In the centre are the seeds in little cases. When the apple is ripe, these seeds become dark-colored.

The apple and the quince belong to the same family of fruits, but the quince has many seeds in each cell, while the apple has only two. The pulp of the quince differs from that of the apple in being always very hard and acid, and its skin is much tougher than that of the apple.

Apples are used for food. They are eaten both raw and cooked. From apple juice cider is made. The pulp of apples is sometimes dried, and then it will keep a long time. From dried apples sauce and pies are made.

Name ten things which you think may be described by the same outline. Describe two of them.

Name something that could not well be described by the outline in this lesson. Make a suitable outline for its description.

## Lesson 141.

### A COMPARISON OF STYLE.

Compare the two following selections, and explain why one is better than the other: —

It was pleasant upon the river. A barge or two went past laden with hay. Reeds and willows bordered the stream; and cattle and gray, venerable horses came and hung their mild heads over the embankment. Here and there was a pleasant village among trees, with a noisy shipping-yard; here and there a villa in a lawn.

It was perfectly delightful upon the river. We could see barge after barge passing, heaped up with tons upon tons of hay. The banks of the stream presented a dense mass of reeds overtopped by the long, waving branches of sad willows, beyond which ancient cattle and still more ancient horses could be seen. There were also lovely little villages, whose calm peace was disturbed only by the tumultuous shipping-yards, and perfectly charming villas surrounded by the loveliest of lawns.

## Lesson 142.

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

For convenience of study irregular verbs may be divided into the following classes: —

Class I. Verbs whose past indicative and past participle are formed by adding *t* to the root, with or without other change.

NOTE. — The letter R. after a verb signifies that the verb has also the regular form.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bereave | bereft R. | bereft R. | kneel | knelt R. | knelt R. |
| beseech | besought | besought | lean | leant R. | leant R. |
| bring | brought | brought | leap | leapt R. | leapt R. |
| burn | burnt R. | burnt R. | learn | learnt R. | learnt R. |
| buy | bought | bought | leave | left | left |
| catch | caught | caught | lose | lost | lost |
| creep | crept | crept | pen | pent R. | pent R. |
| deal | dealt R. | dealt R. | rap | rapt R. | rapt R. |
| dream | dreamt R. | dreamt R. | sleep | slept | slept |
| feel | felt | felt | spoil | spoilt R. | spoilt R. |
| fight | fought | fought | sweep | swept | swept |
| keep | kept | kept | weep | wept | wept |

Class II. Verbs which change the final consonant of the root to *t* to form the past indicative and the past participle.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bend | bent | bent | gird | girt R. | girt R. |
| blend | blent R. | blent R. | lend | lent | lent |
| bless | blest R. | blest R. | pass | past R. | past R. |
| build | built R. | built R. | rend | rent R. | rent R. |
| dress | drest R. | drest R. | send | sent | sent |
| dwell | dwelt R. | dwelt R. | spend | spent | spent |
| gild | gilt R. | gilt R. | | | |

Class III. Verbs whose principal parts are alike.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| beset | cut | let | rid | shut | spread |
| bet R. | hit | put | set | slit R. | sweat R. |
| burst | hurt | quit R. | shed | spit | wet R. |
| cast | knit R. | read | shred R. | split | |

Class IV. Verbs whose past indicative and past participle are alike and formed from the root by vowel change.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| abide | abode | abode | meet | met | met |
| awake | awoke R. | awoke R. | shine | shone | shone |
| behold | beheld | beheld | shoot | shot | shot |
| bind | bound | bound | sit | sat | sat |
| bleed | bled | bled | slide | slid | slid |
| breed | bred | bred | sling | slung | slung |
| cling | clung | clung | slink | slunk | slunk |
| dig | dug | dug | spin | spun | spun |
| feed | fed | fed | stand | stood | stood |
| find | found | found | stick | stuck | stuck |
| fling | flung | flung | sting | stung | stung |
| get | got | got | strike | struck | struck |
| grind | ground | ground | string | strung | strung |
| hang | hung R. | hung R. | swing | swung | swung |
| have | had | had | win | won | won |
| hold | held | held | wind | wound | wound |
| lead | led | led | wring | wrung | wrung |

Class V. Verbs which form their third root from their first or second by adding *n* or *en*.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| am, be | was | been | grow | grew | grown |
| arise | arose | arisen | know | knew | known |
| beat | beat | beaten | lie | lay | lain |
| blow | blew | blown | ride | rode | ridden |
| break | broke | broken | rise | rose | risen |
| choose | chose | chosen | see | saw | seen |
| cleave | clove | cloven | shake | shook | shaken |
| draw | drew | drawn | slay | slew | slain |
| drive | drove | driven | smite | smote | smitten |
| eat | ate | eaten | speak | spoke | spoken |
| fall | fell | fallen | steal | stole | stolen |
| forsake | forsook | forsaken | stride | strode | stridden |
| freeze | froze | frozen | strive | strove | striven |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| swear | swore | sworn | throw | threw | thrown |
| take | took | taken | wear | wore | worn |
| tear | tore | torn | weave | wove | woven |
| thrive | throve R. | thriven R. | write | wrote | written |

Class VI. Other irregular verbs.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| begin | began | begun | have | had | had |
| come | came | come | ring | rang | rung |
| do | did | done | run | ran | run |
| drink | drank | drunk | shrink | shrank | shrunk |
| fly | flew | flown | sing | sang | sung |
| forbear | forbore | forborne | stave | stove | stoved |
| go | went | gone | stink | stank | stunk |

## Lesson 143.

### PUNCTUATION. — WORDS IN THE SAME CONSTRUCTION.

**Words repeated for the sake of emphasis should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, —**

Come, come, be still.

**If one of two or more words or phrases which are in the same construction has a modifier that belongs to itself only, such words or phrases should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, —**

The interest of the state, and the interest of their own ambition, impelled them to unite.

Punctuate these sentences: —

I love not the woman that is vain of her beauty nor the man that prides himself on his wisdom.

An absolute monarchy is a government in which the sover-

eign rules according to his own will and has almost entire power over the lives and property of his subjects.

If at first you don't succeed try try again.

Philip the Second was a small meagre man much below the medium height with thin legs a narrow chest and the shrinking timid air of an habitual invalid.

## Lesson 144.

### DESCRIPTION.

Following the outline given for the apple on page 117, describe: —

The peach. The pear.

## Lesson 145.

### BILLS.

A bill is a written account of goods sold and delivered or of services rendered.

Every bill contains: —

1. The date.
2. The name of the debtor.
3. The name of the creditor.
4. List of articles purchased, or statement of services rendered.
5. Amounts and prices.
6. The date when each article was purchased or the service rendered, if the bill is for articles bought or service rendered at various times.

A bill is made out by the creditor, and presented to the debtor for payment. When the debtor pays the amount, the creditor writes his name at the foot of the bill under the words "Received Payment."

Copy the following bill for services rendered and material furnished at various times: —

ANN ARBOR, MICH., *April* 30, '74.

Miss ALICE JOHNSON,

To C. S. STANLEY, Dr.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Jan. 18 | To 1 Metronome | $6 | |
| " 27 | " Sheet Music | 3 | 50 |
| March 8 | " " " | 2 | 15 |
| April 30 | " 1 Term Lessons | 20 | |
| | | $31 | 65 |

Received Payment,

C. S. STANLEY.

## Lesson 146.

### MANNERS AT A PARTY.

Think what answers you would give to the following questions, and then write an article on Conduct at a Party.

When you receive an invitation to a party, what must be done without delay?

After you have reached your friend's home and have taken off your wraps, whom must you first greet?

How can you appear at ease?

What must you avoid thinking about?

What can you say about sitting on the edge or corner of a chair, tilting it backward or forward, rocking, or drumming upon chair or table?

What can you say about whispering, interrupting others who are speaking, correcting mistakes which others may make, loud laughing or talking?

How should you treat any one whom you may meet at such a gathering?

How is an introduction properly given?

How should you treat one who is talking to you, even though you are not interested in what he says?

How can you aid your hostess in making the evening pleasant?

What should you do when asked to sing, play, or do anything for the entertainment of the company?

What should you say to your hostess when you bid her good-night?

## Lesson 147.

### AMBIGUITY.

A sentence well written will express exactly the writer's thought.

A sentence that can have two or more meanings is called an ambiguous sentence. Such sentences should be carefully avoided.

I cannot do one of these examples.

This sentence is ambiguous. It may mean, "I cannot do any one of these examples" or "There is one of these examples which I cannot do."

Show what two meanings each sentence below may

have, and write the sentence in a form capable of only one meaning.

Since you have come, I have decided not to go.

The young man immediately remarked that she had a pleasant voice.

I shall grant what you ask readily.

We also get salt from the ocean, which is very useful to man.

A tear is due, at least, to the fallen brave.

When Mr. Henry came in, the house was crowded.

My brother has done more for me than my sister.

Were you in the store before to-day?

I can testify that I saw everything that he did on that day.

The child, being sent to apologize for her rude remark, said, "Miss Mollet, I said you were homely, and I am sorry for it."

## Lesson 148.

### SYNONYMS.

Use each of these words in a sentence in which the other synonym could not so properly be placed: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| balance | excuse | artisan |
| artist | remainder | apology |

## Lesson 149.

### REDUNDANT AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Redundant verbs are those having two forms for the same principal part. Irregular verbs which have also regular forms, and those of the following list, are redundant: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| bear | bore | borne, born |
| bid | bade, bid | bidden, bid |
| bite | bit | bitten, bit |
| chide | chid | chidden, chid |
| crow | crew, crowed | crowed |
| dare | durst, dared | dared |
| drink | drank | drunk, drunken |
| sink | sank | sunk, sunken |
| spring | sprang, sprung | sprung |
| tread | trod | trod, trodden |
| wake | woke, waked | waked |

Defective verbs are those which lack some of the modes and tenses. They are the following: —

| Present Tense. | Past Tense. |
|---|---|
| beware | —— |
| can | could |
| may | might |
| must | —— |
| ought | —— |
| shall | should |
| will | would |
| wot | wist |
| —— | quoth |

Give the principal parts of these verbs: —

See, go, run, strike, sleep, say, sell, sit, sing, send, set, drive, stand, find, show, string, sew, hold, hang, fly, hide, write, hurt, think, speak, ride, leave, bring, eat, rise, lie, lay.

## Lesson 150.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The strawberry. The currant.

## Lesson 151.

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

#### The Division of a Nut.

Two boys found a nut and both wanted it. Each grew quite angry because he could not have it all to himself. When a man came by, they gave him the nut to divide for them. He gave each boy half of the shell and kept the kernel himself.

Tell a similar story about two chickens, a worm, and an old hen.

Tell such a story about two cats, a monkey, and a piece of cheese.

## Lesson 152.

### POSITION OF NOUN MODIFIERS.

1. Moses' writings are revered by the Jews.
2. The writings of Moses are found in the Old Testament.
3. Moses, the lawgiver, led the Jews from Egypt.

Judging from the sentences above, where is a noun in the possessive case placed? A phrase modifying a noun? An explanatory noun?

Which expression is better, *a fine gold pen* or *a gold fine pen? A marble elegant mantel* or *an elegant marble mantel?* Where should an adjective denoting the material out of which something is made be placed when used with other adjectives to modify a noun?

Which of the following expressions do you prefer: —

An old colored man or a colored old man?

A nice silk new hat, a new silk nice hat, or a nice new silk hat?

*Adjectives that represent the most important qualities are placed nearest the noun. When the signification does not determine the place of the adjectives, put the shortest first and the longest nearest the noun.*

Use five or six adjectives with each of the following nouns, arranging the adjectives in the proper order: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| man | horse | island | house |
| kite | painting | poem | climate |
| fountain | example | lesson | view |

## Lesson 153.

### REPRODUCTION. — ATTENTION.

If I were a boy again I would school myself into a habit of attention oftener. I would let nothing come between me and the subject in hand. I would remember that an expert on the ice never tries to skate in two directions at once. One of our great mistakes, while we are young, is that we do not attend strictly to what we are about just then, at that particular moment; we do not bend our energies closely enough to what we are doing or learning; we wander into a half interest only, and so never acquire fully what is needful for us to become master of. The practice of being habitually attentive is one easily obtained, if we begin early enough. I often hear grown-up people say, "I couldn't fix my attention on the sermon, or book, although I wished to do so," and the reason is that a habit of attention was never formed in youth.

Let me tell you a sad instance of neglected power of concentration. A friend asked me once to lend him an interesting book, something that would enchain his attention, for he said he was losing the power to read. After a few days he brought back the volume, saying it was no doubt a work of great value and beauty, but that the will to enjoy it had gone from him forever, for other matters would intrude themselves on the page he was trying to understand and enjoy, and rows of figures constantly marshalled themselves on the margin, adding themselves up at the bottom of the leaf.

JAMES T. FIELDS.

## Lesson 154.

### NUMBER OF VERBS.

When the subject of a verb is a noun or pronoun referring to a part, as *one half*, or when it is a collective noun, it is often difficult to tell whether the verb should be singular or plural.

If the reference is to the whole as one body, then the verb should be in the singular number; as, —

The committee has a meeting at eight o'clock.

But if the reference is to the persons or separate things represented by the subject, the verb should be in the plural number; as, —

The committee are men above suspicion.

When the subject consists of two or more nouns or pronouns connected by the conjunction *and*, the verb should be in the plural number, unless the several nouns or pronouns refer to the same person or thing; as, —

Politeness and learning make a gentleman.
Our pastor and friend has gone to Europe.

The parts of a compound subject are considered as taken separately when they are connected by *or*, *nor*, *and not*, *but not*, *if not*, *as well as;* also when each part is preceded by *each*, *every*, or *no*.

If all the parts of a compound subject are taken separately, the verb should agree with the subject nearest to it.

When the parts of a compound subject are connected by *and not*, *but not*, *if not*, *as well as*, the verb agrees with the subject mentioned first and is understood with the other.

Give the reason for the number of each of the verbs in these sentences: —

The fleet were badly shattered.
The fleet was victorious.
The committee has made its report.
The committee were divided in their opinions.
Most of the work is done.
Most of the examples have been solved.
Two-thirds of his money is lost.
Two-thirds of the voters were absent from the polls.
All of them were notified to be present.
All of it is yours.
A portion of our cavalry were dismounted.
A portion of the wheat was damaged.
One-half of the company were women.
One-half of the property was wasted.
He and I are to go.
He, and not I, is to go.
The saint, the husband, and the father prays [one person].
Mercury, Mars, and Venus are the nearest planets.

Mary as well as her brothers is here.
Are your brother and sister at home?
Is your brother or your sister at home?
He and his brother are here.
Either he or his brother is here.
Every man and every woman is interested in the tariff.
Either you or I am mistaken. [A form so awkward should be avoided. Can you improve this sentence?]

## Lesson 155.

### DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATION.

Direct quotation reports or quotes the exact form of words in which another expressed a thought. Indirect quotation reports the thought of another, but changes somewhat the form of words in which he expressed it.

*He said*, "*I will do it*," is direct. *He said that he would do it*, is indirect.

Change the following sentences, the direct to the indirect form, and the indirect to the direct: —

"Do you know when quotation marks should be used?" was the first question asked of Dorothy.

Our teacher told us to put our books away, and she would read us one of Longfellow's poems.

The direction he gave us was, "Be sure that your penmanship is neat and readable."

"My style was not formed without great care, and earnest study of the best authors," said Webster.

Mr. Lincoln once wrote to one of his clients that he did not think there was any use in carrying on a lawsuit; for he

thought that his client was not only not sure of gaining it, but was even quite sure of losing it, and the sooner the suit came to an end the better.

"You have long been my friend," said she; "henceforth we are strangers."

"Is the route practicable?" inquired Bonaparte. "It is barely possible to pass," replied the first engineer. "Then forward," rejoined the consul.

"I chanced to be at West Point," said Emerson, "and, after attending the examination in scientific classes, I went into the barracks. Everything was in perfect order. I asked the first cadet, 'Who makes your bed?' 'I do.' 'Who fetches your water?' 'I do.' 'Who blacks your shoes?' 'I do.'"

When James VI. demanded of Thomas Hamilton the secret whereby he had amassed his enormous wealth, the earl replied, "I never defer till to-morrow what can be done to-day, and never trust to another what I can do myself."

"Better a small bush," say the Scotch, "than no shelter."

## Lesson 156.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The orange. The pineapple. The banana.

## Lesson 157.

### POSITION OF MODIFIERS.

*Modifiers should be placed as near as possible to the words which they modify.*

A modifier should not be placed between two words, phrases, or clauses in such a way as to make it doubtful which of them it modifies.

Tell him, if he is there, we shall not come.

This sentence may mean that if he is there you may tell him we shall not come; or, that you may tell him we shall not come in case he is there.

Combine properly into sentences the following: —

1. A man was killed. With a long beard. By a rifle ball.
2. Mary found a dime. Assorting rags.
3. I saw a man. Digging a ditch. With a Roman nose.
4. A lady called. From Australia. To pay her compliments.
5. A pearl was found. By a sailor. In a shell.
6. The Moor smothered the unhappy Desdemona. Seizing a bolster. Upon this. Full of rage and jealousy.
7. To be sold, a grand piano. About to travel. The property of a lady. In a walnut case. With carved legs.

## Lesson 158.

### PUNCTUATION. — THE DASH.

*The dash may be used to denote an abrupt change of thought; as,* —

He sometimes counsel takes, — and sometimes snuff.

*The dash may be used between letters or figures to denote that the intervening letters or figures are to be included; as,* —

Grant was President 1869–1876.

*A dash is often put after a comma or colon at the end of a paragraph or in a broken line; as,* —

The following is a portion of President Lincoln's second Inaugural Address: —

Neither party expected for the war the magnitude or the duration which it has already attained.

*A side head is set off by a period and a dash; as,* —

NOTE. — The dash is sometimes used in place of the parenthesis.

## Lesson 159.

### RECEIPTS.

A receipt is the written acknowledgment which the person receiving money or goods gives to the one from whom the money or goods are received.

A receipt may be for full or for part payment of a debt, or it may be given for valuables intrusted to another. The purpose for which the receipt is given should in every case be stated.

Copy the following receipts: —

A RECEIPT ON ACCOUNT.

*$475.* *Camden, N. J., Aug. 5, 1885.*

*Received of Lawrence T. White, four hundred seventy-five Dollars on account.*

*Frank R Stebbins.*

A Receipt in Full.

*$1800.* *Brooklyn, N.Y., Oct. 16, 1884.*

*Received of Willard A. Taylor, one thousand eight hundred Dollars in full of all demands to date.*

*Minnie Manchester.*

Receipt to apply to a Particular Purpose.

*$475 50/100* *Oswego, N.Y., July 3, 1851.*

*Received of Charles A. Coult, four hundred seventy-five and 50/100 Dollars to apply to purchase of horse and carriage.*

*Peter J. Morton.*

What is written in the upper right-hand corner of a receipt? What in the upper left-hand corner? In what way is the amount expressed here? What does the body of the receipt state? How are the dollars expressed in the body of the receipt? How are the cents expressed here? Who signs the receipt? In whose favor is the receipt made? Who keeps the receipt?

## Lesson 160

### INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

1. The boys chop wood.
2. They like to chop with a sharp axe.
3. Chopping wood is good exercise.

What is the verb in the first sentence? What words in the second and third sentences denote the same kind of action that the verb in the first sentence denotes?

By what change does the word *chop* become *to chop?* By what change does the word *chop* become *chopping?*

What is the construction of *chop* in the first sentence? Of *to chop* in the second sentence? Of *chopping* in the third sentence?

In the second sentence we have a phrase derived from a verb by prefixing *to*, having still the general meaning of the verb from which it is formed, but not used as a verb. We call such a phrase an infinitive.

In the third sentence we have a word derived from a verb by the addition of *ing*, having the general meaning of the verb from which it is formed, but not used as a verb. We call such a word a participle.

**Infinitives and participles are forms of verbs which have the construction of some other part of speech.**

They are derived from verbs, and express in a general way the same idea as the verb from which they come, but they do not directly assert this idea of any subject. They may have the modifiers and the complements which the verbs from which they are derived might have, and at the same time they perform the office of some other part of speech.

## Lesson 161

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

#### The Woodpecker and the Dove.

A woodpecker and a dove had just returned from a visit to a peacock. The woodpecker said to his companion: "I don't

see why the peacock should be so proud. He has neither fine feet nor a fine voice." The dove answered, "I confess I did not pay any attention to them; for I was occupied in admiring his handsome head, the beauty of his feathers, and his majestic tail."

Imitate this story by writing the conversation of two girls who have returned from a visit to a friend.

## Lesson 162.

### AMBIGUOUS USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

A sentence is often obscured by the wrong use of pronouns. Every pronoun should readily suggest its antecedent, and the same pronoun should not be used in the same sentence to refer to different objects. It is well for a young writer to look over his pages and be sure that each pronoun is rightly used.

In the following sentences the personal pronouns are wrongly used. Write the sentences correctly.

He told him that he would never abandon his friends.

An eagle is so strong that it can seize a lamb in its claws, and it cannot get away.

Instead of engines, horses are used in some cities to haul freight cars through the streets because they make too much noise.

The furnace is filled with iron-ore, and it is melted by heating it with coal, and then the iron can be taken from it.

A pig may have a little sense, but when it is being driven into a pen it seems very small.

He told his friend that if he did not feel better in half an hour, he thought he had better call a cab.

There are so many advantages in speaking one's own language well, and in being a master of it, that, let a man's calling be what it will, it cannot but be worth one's taking some pains in it.

He told the coachman that he would be the death of him if he did not take care what he was about and mind what he said.

I felt that I must go, and I really think that it would have been right.

His sad fate is a warning to all against the folly of taking the first glass; many young men are in need of it.

A steamer is two or three days in going from one end of Lake Superior to the other, and when in the center of it, it is out of sight of land, so large is it.

The yellow fever is a disease that is much dreaded; wealth is no barrier to it, and those that have it at once leave a city as soon as it has made its appearance.

## Lesson 163

### RECEIPTS.

Jane E. Hall paid Ida R. Martin twenty-six dollars and fifty cents as part payment of a debt. Make the receipt.

Write a receipt for three months' rent.

Write a receipt in full.

## Lesson 164.

### DESCRIPTION.

#### Outline.

1. To what class of plants does it belong?
2. Where does it grow?

3. What parts has it?
4. When does it blossom and when does its fruit ripen?
5. How is it propagated?
6. Of what use is it?

### The Pear Tree.

The pear tree is a fruit tree. It grows in the milder portions of the temperate zone. It has a strong root, a thick trunk, many branches with notched leaves, white blossoms, and oblong fruit. It blossoms in spring; the fruit ripens in summer. A pear tree is propagated by seeds, and by shoots from the roots. From it we obtain delicious fruit and good wood for fuel and other purposes.

Compare the outline above with the description which follows it. Write another outline, making changes in the one given, and adding anything interesting that you know about the pear tree. From the new outline write a fuller description of the pear tree.

## Lesson 165.

### ESSAY. — RIVERS.

Write a short essay upon this subject from these hints: —

Source. — Much of rainfall returns to sea by rivers — source in spring or glacier.

Course. — At first small stream — others join — river formed — often miles broad at mouth — seldom straight in course — if land level, slow and navigable — if hilly, rapid — river basin.

Effects. — All rivers bring down mud — sometimes choke up mouths — delta formed as in Nile, Ganges. Rivers very useful — drain off water — if navigable, for communication with interior — render soil fertile — turn machinery.

## Lesson 166.

### CONJUGATION.

**The regular arrangement of the forms of a verb is called conjugation.**

**Verbs used to assist in forming some of the modes and tenses of other verbs are called auxiliary verbs. The auxiliary verbs are *do, be, have, shall, will, may, can, must.***

*Do*, *be*, and *have* are also used as principal verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARIES SHALL AND WILL.

As auxiliaries, *shall* and *will* are usually united in the same tense, as follows: —

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I shall | We shall |
| 2. Thou wilt | You will |
| 3. He will | They will |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I should | We should |
| 2. Thou wouldst | You would |
| 3. He would | They would |

The forms with *thou* will be given throughout the tables of conjugation as those of the second person singular, though these are poetic forms only. The common form of the second person in the singular is the same as in the plural.

In the place of *he* may be inserted any singular subject of the third person, and in the place of *they* any plural subject of the third person. In the second person plural *ye* may be used instead of *you*.

## Lesson 167.

### POSITION OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs and adverbial phrases should be placed as near as possible to the words which they modify.*

Adverbs may occupy a greater variety of positions in a sentence than any other element. Much of the clearness of sentences depends upon the position of the adverbial elements.

An adverb should generally be placed before the adjective, adverb, or phrase which it modifies. It may come before or after the verb which it modifies, or after the auxiliary if the verb is compound.

Explain the use of *only* in each of the following sentences, and tell the exact meaning of each sentence: —

The man has lost his only friend.
The man has only lost his friend.
Only the man has lost his friend.
The man has lost only his friend.

Place in as many suitable positions as you can the word which you are directed to insert in each of the following sentences, and tell the differences in the meanings of the sentences you have thus formed: —

1. One species of bread of coarse quality was allowed to be baked. Insert *only.*
2. This blunder is said to have been made. Insert *actually.*
3. I have done six problems. Insert *only.*
4. He left the room, repeating his lesson. Insert *very slowly*

[What difficulty comes from putting *very slowly* after *room ?*]

5. I bought the horse, and not the buggy. Insert *only.*

6. If you have learned at school to waste time idly, you may stay at home. Insert *only.*

7. The farmers sell their produce to the merchants. Insert *generally.*

8. The word *couple* can be properly applied to objects in connection. Insert *only.*

9. I was sorry to see so many present, for I knew the lecturer had disappointed them. Insert *only.*

10. I am sure you will like this book as well as the last one that you read. Insert *at least.*

11. You have learned part of the lesson assigned you. Insert *only.*

12. An insect looks as though its body were cut into three parts. Insert *almost.*

13. The praise was bestowed upon the workmanship, but upon the material. Insert *not.*

14. Drunkenness was found to be the cause of the insanity in fewer than eight out of the eleven cases. Insert *not.*

15. The rendition of the Creation was most excellent. Insert *by the Philharmonic Society.*

16. The grocers and the confectioners conspired together to adulterate the articles in which they dealt. Insert *in a thousand ways.*

17. There were many buildings left which he had begun, and which no one expects to see completed. Insert *in an unfinished state.*

18. Nothing was ever undertaken by this man. Insert *that was not perfectly honorable.*

19. A learned man when he is not on his guard would make the same mistake. Insert *even.*

20. I heard that you had gone to Europe. Insert *two months ago.*

## Lesson 168.

### CHECKS.

A check is an order for money, addressed to a bank by a person having money therein on deposit. The amount of the order must be written both in figures and in words.

A check is negotiable when it may be transferred to another person. An indorsement of a check is that which is written on the back of it to make it negotiable.

A check may be non-negotiable, negotiable without indorsement, or negotiable by indorsement.

A check made payable to one person only cannot be transferred to another, and hence is non-negotiable.

NON-NEGOTIABLE CHECK.

*Fall River, Mar. 7, 1883.*

*Second National Bank.* *No. 1839.*

*Pay to* Howard Emison, $600^{00}/_{100}$

*Six hundred* *Dollars.*

Nelson R. Angell.

A check made payable to bearer is negotiable without indorsement.

*Fall River, Mar. 7, 1883.*

*Second National Bank.* *No. 1842.*

*Pay to* Bearer, $600^{00}/_{100}$

*Six hundred* *Dollars.*

Caroline B. Robertson.

A check made payable to a certain person or his order is negotiable by indorsement.

*Louisville, Ky., Dec. 12, 1881.*

*Louisville National Bank.* *No. 314.*

*Pay to the order of Stephen Chase,* ~~~~~ *$205$^{00}/_{100}$*
*Two hundred five $^{00}/_{100}$* ~~~~~ *Dollars.*

*Chas. A. Pelton.*

Copy the checks in this lesson. To whom is each check payable? How does the wording of each check differ from that of the others? Of what use is the number at the right?

## Lesson 169.

### MANNERS WHEN VISITING.

Write a set of directions as to what one should do and should not do when a guest at a friend's home.

## Lesson 170.

### PARAPHRASE.

A paraphrase is a statement in different form of the thought contained in a given passage.

Paraphrasing gives to the student of English much of the advantage gained by the student of foreign languages. His power of discrimination is exercised and his taste improved. He enters as otherwise he hardly would into

the thought of the writer, and appreciates the beauties of his style.

To make a paraphrase, the pupil should read the passage over very carefully, giving attention to the thought rather than to the language.

In paraphrasing, the pupil may —

1. Restore the natural order of the words.
2. Select simpler words and more expressive language.
3. Break up long and involved sentences into shorter ones.
4. Combine disconnected sentences by the use of suitable connectives.
5. Abridge clauses to words and phrases.
6. Expand words and phrases into clauses.
7. Change active verbs to passive, and passive to active.
8. Employ introductory words to give variety to the order of the sentences.

Compare this stanza of William Cullen Bryant's with the paraphrase which follows it. In the paraphrase, what changes have been made from the stanza?

The melancholy days are come, the saddest of the year,
Of wailing winds, and naked woods, and meadows brown and sear.
Heaped in the hollows of the grove, the autumn leaves lie dead;
They rustle to the eddying gust, and to the rabbit's tread.

These days seem to me the saddest of all the year, and they always bring a feeling of melancholy with them. The winds have a mournful sound, the meadows are brown and dreary, and the woods, how forlorn they look! All the bright autumn leaves, now brown and dead, lie massed together in the hollows, rustling mournfully as the breeze sweeps over them, or as the rabbit steps lightly upon them.

## Lesson 171.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The oak. The maple. The pine.

## Lesson 172.

### CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY MAY.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I may | We may |
| 2. Thou mayest (mayst) | You may |
| 3. He may | They may |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I might | We might |
| 2. Thou mightest (mightst) | You might |
| 3. He might | They might |

*Can* [thou canst] has for its past tense *could* [thou couldest or couldst].

*Must* has the present tense only, and has no variation for person and number.

Write the present and past tenses of *can*, and the present tense of *must*.

How is the second person singular of *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should* formed from the first person? How is the second person singular of *will* and *shall* formed?

## Lesson 173.

### SYNONYMS.

Use each of these words in a sentence in which the other synonyms could not so properly be placed: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| error | mistake | blunder |
| abandon | forsake | desert |

## Lesson 174.

### INDORSEMENT OF CHECKS.

To indorse a check: first, turn the check so that the left-hand end becomes the top of the check; second, turn the check over sidewise; third, write your name across the back, near the top.

If you wish to deposit a check or to make it payable to bearer, indorse it with your name alone. If you wish to make it payable to some particular person, write, "Pay to the order of ——" above your name.

Write your name on the back of the check just as it is written on the face. If your name is misspelled on the face, write it in just the same way on the back, and under this write your name correctly spelled.

A check may be transferred to several persons, but must be indorsed each time.

Write a check negotiable by indorsement, and indorse it properly.

Make the check non-negotiable.

Make it negotiable without indorsement.

## Lesson 175.

### DESCRIPTION.

Describe: —

The dandelion. The daisy. The violet.

## Lesson 176.

### CONJUGATION OF THE VERB HAVE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Present*, have; *past*, had; *past participle*, had.

INDICATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I have | We have |
| 2. Thou hast | You have |
| 3. He has (hath) | They have |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I had | We had |
| 2. Thou hadst | You had |
| 3. He had | They had |

*Future Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I shall have | We shall have |
| 2. Thou wilt have | You will have |
| 3. He will have | They will have |

The present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses are respectively formed by adding *had* to the forms given above. Write out these forms.

POTENTIAL MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I may have | We may have |
| 2. Thou mayest have | You may have |
| 3. He may have | They may have |

The auxiliaries *can* and *must* may be used in place of *may* in forming the present potential of this and other verbs.

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I might have | We might have |
| 2. Thou mightest have | You might have |
| 3. He might have | They might have |

The auxiliaries *could*, *would*, and *should* may be used instead of *might*.

The present perfect tense is formed by adding *had* to the forms of the present tense, and the past perfect tense by adding *had* to the forms of the past tense. Write out these forms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. If I have | If we have |
| 2. If thou have | If you have |
| 3. If he have | If they have |

*Past Tense.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. Have [thou] | Have [you] |

INFINITIVES.

| *Present.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|
| To have | To have had |

PARTICIPLES.

| *Present.* | *Past.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|---|
| Having | Had | Having had |

## Lesson 177.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not use —

| | |
|---|---|
| *first of all* for *first* | *climb up* for *climb* |
| *last of all* for *last* | *rise up* for *rise* |
| *both alike* for *alike* | *cover over* for *cover* |
| *equally as well* for *equally well*, or *as well* | *sink down* for *sink* |
| | *on to* for *upon* or *on* |
| *widow woman* for *widow* | *over again* for *again* |

The preposition *of* should not be used unnecessarily after a verb or an adverb. Do not say "admit of," "allow of," "off of."

The expressions which you are directed not to use contain words not necessary to the sense.

## Lesson 178.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTIONS.

An object is not sufficiently described if any important statement is omitted, or if the description given is equally true of some similar object.

Accuracy and power in description are best secured by exercises in contrasted description; and so much of contrast as is essential should be given in every description. The outlines already given will be found of service in writing contrasted descriptions. In connection with each question ask, How do the objects being described resemble each other in this particular, and how do they differ?

Study this contrasted description of —

THE OWL AND THE EAGLE.

The owl and the eagle are both birds of prey, but the owl seeks his prey by night, while the eagle seeks his by day.

The owl is distinguished from all other birds by his extremely large head and great, staring eyes, which are surrounded by a disk of feathers radiating outwards. These eyes can see well in twilight or moonlight, but are unable to bear the glare of sunlight. The owl's sense of hearing is very acute. His plumage is loose and very soft, and his flight is almost noiseless, thus enabling him to take his prey by surprise.

The eagle is remarkable for his exceedingly keen eyesight and his great strength. He soars to a vast height in the sky.

The eagle is a finer looking bird than the owl. The plumage of these birds varies in different species, but the eagle is generally golden-brown, and the owl gray or white. The bill of the eagle is curved, though not from the very base, like the owl's. The wings of the eagle are very broad, and are adapted for rapid and lengthy flights, while the wings of the owl, though generally long, are not so serviceable. The claws of both birds are curved and sharp, but those of the eagle are much stronger. The tail of the owl, unlike that of the eagle, is generally rather short and round.

The owl lays five or six eggs, and the eagle two or three. Both birds feed upon hares, fishes, birds, and game of every kind. The eagle often carries off and devours larger animals, such as little pigs and lambs, while some species of owls live entirely upon insects.

The owl is often considered a bird of ill-omen, perhaps on account of his peculiar, dismal cry. The eagle is called the King of Birds, and is regarded as an emblem of might and courage.

## Lesson 179.

### CONJUGATION OF THE VERB WRITE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Present,* write; *past,* wrote; *past participle,* written.

INDICATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I write | We write |
| 2. Thou writest | You write |
| 3. He writes (writeth) | They write |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I wrote | We wrote |
| 2. Thou wrotest | You wrote |
| 3. He wrote | They wrote |

The future tense is formed by adding *write* to the forms of the present tense of the auxiliary *shall* or *will.* The present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses are formed by adding *written* to the present, past, and future tenses respectively of the indicative mode of *have.* Write out these forms.

POTENTIAL MODE.

The present and past tenses potential are formed by adding *write* to the present and past tenses of *may*, *can*, or *must.* The present perfect and past perfect tenses are formed by adding *written* to the present and the past tenses potential of *have.* Write out these forms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

The form *write* is used without variation for person and number.

*Past Tense.*

The form *wrote* is used without variation for person and number.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Write [thou] | Write [you] |

INFINITIVES.

| *Present.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|
| To write | To have written. |

PARTICIPLES.

| *Present.* | *Past.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|---|
| Writing | Written | Having written |

## Lesson 180.

### ORDER OF EMPHASIS.

The usual order of words in a sentence gives the meaning most clearly. Force and elegance are often gained by an unusual order. The first requisite of a good sentence is clearness. This must not be sacrificed for the sake of force or elegance. But, being sure that your sentences are clear, make them as forcible and elegant as you can.

Any unusual position makes an element emphatic. The

emphatic position for the subject is, therefore, the middle or the end of the sentence.

To give emphasis to the subject, the sentence may begin with a phrase modifying the subject, or with an adverbial element; as, —

Close by Harvard College, and opposite the Cambridge Common, was the birthplace of Oliver Wendell Holmes.

From the summit of Vesuvius, darkly visible in the distance, there shot a pale, meteoric light.

Write the following sentences so as to make the subjects more emphatic: —

1. The live thunder leaps from peak to peak.
2. The mouth speaketh out of the abundance of the heart.
3. More than 150,000 Indians, wholly or partly civilized, live within the limits of the United States.
4. A picturesque old building called the "Old Stone Mill" is found in the city of Newport, R.I.
5. Carthage, surrounded by regions without a master, could not resist the desire of conquest.
6. The sons of New England are found in every state of the broad republic.
7. Our only adequate measures of time are derived from the observations of the heavenly bodies.
8. A spacious and varied landscape stretched far beyond the precincts of the manse.
9. The luxuries of Pompeii would have sunk into insignificance, placed in contrast with the mighty pomp of Rome.
10. The Arab's deadliest foe, having once broken bread with him, may repose without fear of harm beneath his tent.
11. The trade winds, laden with moisture, sweep across the Atlantic to Brazil and the West Indies.

## Lesson 181.

### THE VERB DO.

The principal parts of the verb *do* are: —

*Present,* do; *past,* did; *past participle,* done.

Write out the conjugation of this verb through all the modes, tenses, and numbers of the active voice.

See the conjugation of the verb *write* on page 152.

## Lesson 182.

### PROMISSORY NOTES.

A promissory note is a formal written promise to pay a certain amount of money to a certain person at a certain time, or upon demand. Like a check, it is negotiable or non-negotiable. Three days, called Days of Grace, are allowed for the payment of a note after it becomes due.

Copy the following notes. In what way is each different from the others?

*$300.* *East Saginaw, Mich., Nov. 17, 1886.*

*Thirty days after date, I promise to pay to the order of H. M. Newton,*

*Three hundred ~~~~~ Dollars at First National Bank, with interest at the rate of six per cent after maturity.*

*Value received.* *Bertha L. Jones.*

*No. 239. Due Dec. 17/20, '86.*

$875\frac{75}{100}$. Dover, N.H., May 7, 1887.

Sixty days after date, we jointly and severally promise to pay Wm. A. White, or order, Eight hundred seventy-five $\frac{75}{100}$ Dollars, value received.

H. S. Carpenter.
Wm. W. Woodin.

No. 115. Concord, N.H., Jan. 22, 1891.

On demand, I promise to pay Howard C. Draper, or order, Twenty-five ~~~

## Lesson 184.

### CONJUGATION OF THE VERB BE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Present*, am; *past*, was; *past participle*, been.

INDICATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I am | We are |
| 2. Thou art | You are |
| 3. He is | They are |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I was | We were |
| 2. Thou wast | You were |
| 3. He was | They were |

The future tense is formed by adding *be* to the forms of the present tense of *shall* or *will*.

The present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses are formed by adding *been* to the present tense, past tense, and future tense respectively of *have*.

Write out these tenses.

POTENTIAL MODE.

The present and past tenses potential are formed by adding *be* to the present and past tenses of *may*, *can*, etc.

The present perfect and past perfect tenses are formed by adding *been* to the present and past tenses potential of *have*.

Write out these tenses.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. If I be | If we be |
| 2. If thou be | If you be |
| 3. If he be | If they be |

*Past Tense.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. If I were | If we were |
| 2. If thou wert | If you were |
| 3. If he were | If they were |

IMPERATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. Be [thou] | Be [you] |

INFINITIVES.

| *Present.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|
| To be | To have been |

PARTICIPLES.

| *Present.* | *Past.* | *Perfect.* |
|---|---|---|
| Being | Been | Having been |

## Lesson 185.

### EMPHATIC SUBJECT.

Form sentences of these elements and arrange them in such a way as to make each subject emphatic.

1. White, black, and gray fox-skins. Are the principal articles of commerce. Gray squirrels and sables. Among the Laplanders.

2. These colossal mountains glow. In warmer light. And of warmer hue. Or pyramid of Egypt. Than a dome of Constantinople or Venice ever did.

3. A boy was born. In Italy. Named Cristopher Columbus. About 1435. At Genoa.

4. An old book stands. In my library. On one of the shelves. And in various languages. On various subjects. Surrounded by volumes of all kinds.

5. An old gentleman was there. In a blouse. A very fine young man. With no teeth to speak of. In a black coat. Three handsome girls were there. Making an interesting group.

6. Not a sound was audible. In some meadows. That descends the hill. Except that of the sheep-bells. By the river. Down the long road. Of a cart. And the creaking.

7. There was a small gray cloud. Resting on the water. The size of a man's hand. Down in the south.

8. Henry VIII. had lived almost without blame. With his character unformed. Left at the most trying age. For thirty-six years. With the means at his disposal for gratifying every inclination.

9. There was a little lowly hermitage. Down in a dale Far from the resort of men. Hard by a forest's side.

## Lesson 186.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of: —

A lion and a tiger. A dog and a cat.

An eagle and a vulture.

## Lesson 187.

### TENSES OF THE SEVERAL MODES.

The indicative is the only mode that has all the tenses. The potential mode is used in four tenses, — present, past, present perfect, and past perfect.

The subjunctive mode is used in two tenses, — present and past.

The imperative mode is used in the present tense only.

Tell the modes and the tenses of the verbs italicized in the following story: —

George III. one day *visited* a small town in England, and *took* a solitary walk that he *might see* something of the country. He *came* to a hay-field in which there *was* only one woman at work. The King *asked* where all the rest *were*. The woman *replied* that they *had gone* into town to see the King. "Why *didn't* you *go* too?" *inquired* George. "Pooh!" she *answered*, "I *wouldn't walk* three yards to see him. Besides, they *have lost* a day's work by going; and *were* I to go my children *would suffer*, for I *am* too poor to lose a day's work." George *slipped* a sovereign into her hand, and *said*, "When the rest *shall come* back, *tell* them that while they *had gone* to see the King, the King *came* to see you, and *left* you his portrait in gold to remember him by."

## Lesson 188.

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

THE MOUNTAIN AND THE SQUIRREL.

The mountain and the squirrel had a quarrel;
And the former called the latter, "Little Prig."

Bun replied, "You are doubtless very big;
But all sorts of things and weather
Must be taken in together
To make up a year
And a sphere;
And I think it no disgrace
To occupy my place.
If I'm not so large as you,
You are not so small as I,
And not half so spry.
I'll not deny you make
A very pretty squirrel track;
Talents differ; all is well and wisely put;
If I cannot carry forests on my back,
Neither can you crack a nut. R. W. EMERSON.

Write in your own words a somewhat similar speech which a bird might make to a tree with which he had quarrelled.

## Lesson 189.

### PREDICATE ADJECTIVE EMPHATIC.

What is the natural position of the predicate adjective? How can it be made emphatic?

Write the following sentences so as to emphasize the predicate adjective: —

1. All the fine offers of hospitality are vain and forgotten, if the eye speaks otherwise.

2. Running water is clear, sweet, and fresh; but stagnant water is impure and harmful.

3. Castles in the air are always more magnificent than the homes in which we dwell.

4. The merciful are blessed, for they shall obtain mercy.

5. Thy dwelling is narrow now — the place of thine abode dark.

6. He was strong and brave and violent.

7. The houses were so near to the water that from a little distance they seemed a black fringe to the land.

8. The air of mountains is too rarefied, and that of deep mines too dense, for the free development of animal or vegetable life.

9. Is it not strange that there should be such a likeness?

## Lesson 190.

### NOTES ON THE MODES.

The indicative is the chief mode, and may be used in the place of each of the other modes.

Like the potential mode, it may assert obligation; as, —

He ought to do it.

Like the subjunctive mode, it may assert condition; as, —

If it rains, we shall not go.

Like the imperative mode, it may assert a command; as, —

Thou shalt not steal.

The potential mode is distinguished from the indicative more by the auxiliaries it employs than by any absolute difference of use.

The subjunctive mode has two tenses,—the present and the past, and has no variation for person and number. The verb *to be* is an exception to this statement. For its subjunctive forms see page 158.

When the action or the being expressed by the verb is stated as a fact or is referred to as merely unknown, the verb should be in the indicative mode. If the statement refers to a future event whose existence is doubtful, the present subjunctive is usually employed. The past subjunctive is used to express a wish or a supposition contrary to fact.

Which of the verbs in the following sentences are in the subjunctive mode? Explain the application of the preceding remarks to each.

It is time that he were here.

Would he do it if he were in her place?

I wish I were there.

Were I so disposed, I could not grant this.

The bird skims, as it were, over the plains.

If there be a will, wisdom will find a way.

Had there been less suffering in the world, there would have been less kindness.

Goethe said there would be little left of him if he were to discard what he owed to others.

Happy were it for us, did we constantly view our Creator in His works!

Though he were as rich as Crœsus, still would man be dissatisfied with his condition.

If I lose mine honor, I lose myself.

If every day were a sunny day, who would not wish for rain?

If the brain sows not corn, it plants thistles.

Though He slay me, yet will I trust in Him.

## Lesson 191.

### ORDERS.

An order is a request made to an individual or a firm for the delivery of money or merchandise which is to be charged to the account of the writer.

Write the following order from dictation: —

$17\frac{60}{100}$. Boston, Mass., *May* 9, 1889.

Messrs. Brown & Chapman.

Please pay to David Smith, or bearer, seventeen and $\frac{60}{100}$ dollars in merchandise, and charge the same to my account.

Dennis O'Reiley.

How does an order differ from a check?

Write two orders similar to the one given above.

Write an order on Marcus Sheridan for eighty-seven dollars, in favor of Edward Snow.

## Lesson 192.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of copper and tin. These hints will help you in your description.

Copper. — Obtained from fissures or veins in rocks — peculiar reddish color — nauseous taste — acted upon by acids — should not be employed in cooking — very malleable — easily corroded — second only to iron in tenacity — fusible — ductile — copper bottoms for ships, poisonous rust prevents marine plants and animals from adhering to it — used for bell metal —

lightning conductors, underground telegraph wires — coinage — found in Great Britain, Australia, Cuba, Chili, and near Lake Superior.

Tin. — Silvery white — soft metal — tenacity only moderate — easily fused — brilliant and reflective — very malleable — does not rust — used to protect surfaces of copper and iron — manufacture of looking-glasses — dishes — tin-foil used instead of paper for preserving articles — employed for coating pins and culinary utensils — found chiefly in England, also in Bohemia, Saxony, Portugal, Australia, and in Black Hills of Dakota — found in veins running through rocks, and also by washing alluvial deposits.

## Lesson 193.

### EMPHATIC AND INTERROGATIVE FORMS.

Most verbs have in the present and past tenses indicative and in the imperative mode an emphatic form made by joining their root to the present and the past indicative and the imperative of the verb *do:* as, I *do* study.

Give the common and the emphatic forms of the verbs *study*, *teach*, *learn*, *come*.

Verbs are conjugated interrogatively by placing the subject after the verb in the simple forms, and after the first auxiliary in the compound forms of the indicative and potential modes.

Give the common and the interrogative forms of the indicative and potential modes of the verbs *skate*, *try*, and *go*.

## Lesson 194.

### ADJECTIVE EMPHATIC.

Unite these elements in such a way as to make the adjectives emphatic: —

1. The native Laplander defies the severity. Wrapped up. Of his climate. In his deerskins.

2. The general gave the order. Overwhelmed with doubt. To retreat. In vast numbers. Of the enemy. And fearing the approach. Every moment. To their ships.

3. Thou hast been to me. Very pleasant. Wonderful. To me. Thy love was.

4. Whether king or peasant. In his home. Happiest. Who finds peace. He is.

5. Napoleon never seemed to be aware. To the captivating idol of fame. That truth is essential. As he was devoted. To the purest and most lasting celebrity.

6. The noble Custer fell. Waving aloft the sabre. Abandoned in the midst of incredible odds. Which had won him victory so often. Cut off from aid.

7. Garfield was great. In death. Surpassingly. In life. Great.

8. The steps of freedom are slow. But her feet turn backward never.

## Lesson 195.

### DIALOGUE.

THE HAPPIEST SPOT.

But where to find that happiest spot below,
Who can direct when all pretend to know?

The shuddering tenant of the frigid zone
Boldly proclaims that happiest spot his own,
Extols the treasures of his stormy seas,
And his long nights of revelry and ease;
The naked negro, panting at the line,
Boasts of his golden sands and palmy wine,
Basks in the glare, or stems the tepid wave,
And thanks his gods for all the good they gave.
Such is the patriot's boast where'er we roam,
His first, best country ever is at home.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

Study this stanza of Goldsmith's, then write a dialogue between an Esquimaux and a negro, in which each argues that his country is the best. Find out what you can about the regions where they live, and make your dialogue interesting.

## Lesson 196.

### NEGATIVE FORMS.

Verbs may be conjugated negatively by placing the adverb *not* after the verb in the simple form and after the first auxiliary in the compound forms. *Not* may be placed either before or after the infinitives and participles.

Give the negative forms of the verbs *hide*, *look*, and *whisper* in the indicative mode.

Give the negative forms of the verbs *send*, *find*, and *hasten* in the potential and imperative modes.

Give the emphatic negative interrogative forms of the verbs *know*, *sing*, and *see* in the indicative mode. [Present and past tenses.]

## Lesson 197.

### DRAFTS.

A draft is an order made in one place and directing the payment of money in another.

Drafts may be sight drafts or time drafts.

A sight draft is payable when presented.

A time draft is payable at a stated time after presentation, or at a certain number of days after date.

Drafts, like checks, are negotiable or non-negotiable.

The person upon whom a draft is drawn may accept it, and so become liable for its payment, by writing the word "Accepted" with the date, and signing his name beneath it across the face of the draft, near the left hand end. This is usually done in red ink.

Copy the following draft: —

*$165.* *St. Louis, Mo., Feb. 25, 1874.*

*At sight,* *pay to*
*the order of* *Myra C. Stoneman,*
*One hundred sixty-five* ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ *Dollars.*
*Value received, and charge to account of*

*To David Martin & Co.,* *Daniel Bogman.*
*No. 169.* *Pontiac, Mich.*

In what respects does a draft resemble a letter? In what respects does it differ from a letter?

Write a draft to the order of your teacher, directing it to the Home Savings Bank of Jonesville, Nebraska.

## Lesson 198.

### PROGRESSIVE AND PASSIVE FORMS.

*The progressive form of a verb is made by joining the present participle of the verb to the forms of the verb* be.

*The passive* [*form*] *voice of a verb is made by joining its past participle to the forms of the verb* be.

The progressive form has no past participle. The passive voice has the same past participle as the active voice.

Give the progressive and the passive forms of the verb *choose* in the present indicative; of the verb *catch* in the past indicative; of the verb *miss* in the future indicative; of the verb *give* in the present perfect indicative; of the verb *take* in the past perfect indicative; of the verb *tell* in the future perfect indicative.

Give the passive forms of the verb *forget* in the potential, subjunctive, and imperative modes.

Give the passive infinitives and participles of the verbs *drive* and *steal*.

Give the interrogative passive form of the present perfect tense, potential mode, of the verbs *teach* and *forsake*.

## Lesson 199.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of: —

Gold and iron. Brass and bronze.

Marble and granite.

## Lesson 200.

### OBJECT EMPHATIC.

The object, like other elements, may be made emphatic by change of position; as, —

Our blessings let us never forget, however small they may be.

As the subject is a more important element than the object, emphasis may be given to the object by making it the subject and changing the verb to the passive voice.

1. James struck John. 2. John was struck by James.

In the first of these sentences attention is called to James, and in the second to John.

Write the following sentences so as to make the object emphatic: —

1. Great undertakings demand mature deliberation, patient perseverance, and frequent revision.
2. The army did not possess a braver soldier than Captain Nolan.
3. Wherever we turn our eyes, we find something to revive our curiosity and engage our attention.
4. As far as I have heard, they never say a word about you.
5. The study of mathematics trains the mind to industry and perseverance.
6. He restored me to my office and hanged him.

Unite these elements in such a way as to emphasize the object of each sentence: —

1. I have none. Silver and gold. But I give thee. Such as I have.

2. No man hath greater love. That a man lay down his life. Than this. For his friends.

3. Yonder slip of a boy feels to be true. Of the king. Of himself. All that Shakespeare says. In the corner.

4. You might say. Of singing. And whistling. That the red squirrel successfully accomplishes. The difficult feat. At the same time.

5. One cannot express. In these Rocky Mountain solitudes. The silence. The sense of space. The peculiar atmospheric beauty. Nor can one describe.

6. An idle boy invented the safety-valve. To let off the superabundant steam. To save himself the trouble. In a steam-engine. Of opening a small door.

## Lesson 201.

### REPRODUCTION.

#### Learning to Use Tools.

A boy ought to be at home in a barn, and learn to harness a horse, tinker up a wagon, feed the animals, and do a hundred useful things, the experience of which may be of special service to him in after-life when unlooked-for emergencies befall him. I have seen an ex-President of the United States, when an old man, descend from his carriage, and rearrange buckles and straps about his horses when an accident occurred, while the clumsy coachman stood by in a kind of helpless inactivity, not knowing the best thing to be done. The ex-President told me he had learned about such matters on a farm in his boyhood, and he was never at a loss for remedies on the road when his carriage broke down.

It is a pleasant relaxation from books and study to work

an hour every day in a tool-shop. The learned and lovable Prof. Oliver Wendell Holmes finds such comfort in "mending things" when his active brain needs repose, that he sometimes breaks a piece of furniture on purpose that he may have the relief of putting it together again much better than it was before. He is as good a mechanic as he is a poet; but there is nothing mechanical about his poetry, as you all know who read his delightful pieces. An English author of great repute said to me, not long ago, "Professor Holmes is writing the best English of our times." And I could not help adding, "Yes, and inventing the best stereoscopes, too!"

JAMES T. FIELDS.

## Lesson 202.

### SHALL AND WILL.

*Shall* and *will* are both used as auxiliaries to form the future tense of other verbs; but they are by no means interchangeable. When the future is to be merely foretold and without the expression of the will of any person, *shall* should be used in the first person and *will* in the second and third. But when the speaker wishes to show *his* purpose in respect to a future act or event, he uses *will* in the first person and *shall* in the second and third.

This distinction gives rise to a common and an emphatic form for the future tense.

COMMON FORM.

*Affirmative.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I shall | We shall |
| 2. Thou wilt | You will |
| 3. He will | They will |

*Interrogative.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. Shall I? | Shall we? |
| 2. Shalt thou? | Shall you? |
| 3. Will he? | Will they? |

EMPHATIC FORM.

*Affirmative.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. I will | We will |
| 2. Thou shalt | You shall |
| 3. He shall | They shall |

*Interrogative.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| 1. Shall I? | Shall we? |
| 2. Wilt thou? | Will you? |
| 3. Shall he? | Shall they? |

*Shall* is used to denote obligation or necessity; *will* to denote choice or purpose.

*I shall go* means that in the course of events my going will occur. *I will go* means that I am resolved to go.

*You will go* means that of your own accord you will go. *You shall go* means that I will compel you to go.

*He will go* implies that he does it readily, or of his own accord. *He shall go* implies that I will require him to go.

In the interrogative form the choice of the person spoken to is sought.

*Shall I go?* means, is it your wish or intention that I should go? *Shall you go?* means, will circumstances permit you to go? *Will you go?* means, do you intend to go? *Will he go?* inquires whether of his own accord he will go. *Shall he go?* asks whether you will require him to go.

Insert either *shall* or *will* in these blanks, and explain why you use the auxiliary that you do in each case: —

I fear that I —— die of this disease.

If I go out in the rain, I —— catch cold, for my feet —— get wet, as my shoes are thin.

If you —— not assist me, I —— not be able to finish it in time.

I —— be sixteen years old next May.

I hope I —— soon be better.

I —— not be there so early.

—— I go with the letter to the office?

—— you wait till I return?

I —— have some friends to dine with me to-day; —— you join us?

Lincoln once wrote, in regard to the Indians, "I —— not rest until they —— have justice."

Come, now, state positively whether you —— or not.

We —— not look upon his like again.

We —— not permit you to do this.

The distinction between the use of *should* and *would* is the same as that between *shall* and *will*, *should* being the past tense of *shall*, and *would* the past tense of *will*. *Should* likewise expresses wish or purpose; as, —

You should do it.

State the difference between —

Will you leave me? *and* Shall you leave me?

You will leave me *and* You shall leave me.

He will go *and* He shall go.

Will he go? *and* Shall he go?

You will not shoot anything this afternoon *and* You shall not shoot anything this afternoon.

## Lesson 203.

### BUSINESS FORMS.

1. Write an order for goods.
2. Make out the bill for the goods ordered.
3. Write three different kinds of checks in payment of the bill. Indorse one of them.
4. Write a receipt acknowledging the payment of the bill.
5. Write an order for the amount of the bill to be paid in merchandise by some business firm.
6. Make a sight draft to pay the bill.
7. Make a time draft to pay the bill.
8. Write an interest-bearing promissory note in payment of the bill.

## Lesson 204.

### ESSAYS.

GIPSIES. — Tell what you can of the history, habits, and means of living of the gipsies.

OLD AND MODERN FURNITURE. — Contrast the furniture and decoration of a dwelling-room of olden time with that of a modern one.

PARKS. — For what are parks intended? Describe a park in your city.

HISTORY. — Write a description of a beautiful landscape that you have seen.

## Lesson 205.

### ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS EMPHATIC.

*An adverbial element is rendered prominent by being placed at the beginning of the sentence; as,* —

Scarcely for a righteous man will one die, yet peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die.

Write the following sentences so as to make the adverb or adverbial phrase emphatic: —

1. The animals excel us in some respects.
2. Every word is necessary in poetry, where every word is free.
3. All the organs are sheathed in a snake; it has no hands, no feet, no fins, no wings. The organs are released in bird and beast and begin to play. They are all unbound in man and full of joyful action.
4. David encountered Goliath with a simple sling and stone, and slew him.
5. As iron is corrupted by rust, so the mind is corrupted by idleness.
6. A skilful eye can discriminate different kinds of wood by observing the grain.
7. The Pilgrims set sail without aid from the government, and without any royal charter, for the New World.
8. The bee collects but very little honey from a single flower.
9. The sparrow lives in affluence during three-quarters of the year. He makes his raid on gardens, fields, and meadows.
10. He earns his bread by the work of his own hands.

## Lesson 206.

### REVIEW OF CONJUGATION.

Give the present tense of *shall;* of *will.* In what mode and tense of principal verbs do you find the present tense of *shall* or *will* used as an auxiliary? Give the past tense of *shall;* of *will.* In what tense of principal verbs do you find the past tense of *shall* or *will* used as an auxiliary?

Give the present tense of *may;* of *can;* of *must.* In what tense of principal verbs are these forms used as auxiliaries? Give the past tense of *may;* of *can.* In what tense of principal verbs are these forms used as auxiliaries?

Give the present and past tenses, indicative, of *do.* In what tenses are these forms used as auxiliaries? Which auxiliary verbs are used as principal verbs also? Which auxiliary verb has but one tense? Which auxiliary verbs have two tenses? Which auxiliary verbs have more than two tenses? Which auxiliary verbs have compound tenses? Which auxiliaries are used only in the indicative mode? Which are used only in the potential mode? What auxiliary is sometimes used in the imperative mode? [*Ans.* Do.] What auxiliary is used in the emphatic form of verbs?

## Lesson 207.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of: —

Day and night. Sun and moon.

Daisy and buttercup.

## Lesson 208.

### PARAPHRASE.

Write a paraphrase of the following poem: —

FLOWERS.

Spake full well, in language quaint and olden,
One who dwelleth by the castled Rhine,
When he called the flowers, so blue and golden,
Stars, that in earth's firmament do shine.

Wondrous truths, — and manifold as wondrous,
God has written in those stars above;
But not less in the bright flowerets under us
Stands the revelation of His love.

Everywhere about us are they glowing —
Some, like stars, to tell us spring is born;
Others, their blue eyes with tears o'erflowing,
Stand, like Ruth, amid the glowing corn.

And the poet, faithful and farseeing,
Sees, alike in stars and flowers, a part
Of the self-same, universal being
Which is throbbing in his brain and heart.

LONGFELLOW.

After changing this poetry into prose, compare the result with the following paraphrase, and see which is better. Observe how much more beautiful the poetry is than the prose paraphrase which contains the same thoughts.

FLOWERS.

A poet who dwells beside the Rhine spoke well when he called the flowers the "stars of earth's firmament."

God has written many and wonderful truths in the stars that shine above us, but not less in the flowers beneath our feet is there a revelation of His love.

Flowers grow about us everywhere: some to tell us spring is here; others, their petals filled with dew, stand, like Ruth, amid the corn.

The poet — who is faithful and who sees farther than other men do — sees that the being animating stars and flowers is a part of that being that fills his own mind and his own soul.

## Lesson 209.

### REVIEW OF CONJUGATION.

In what tenses of the active voice, common form, is the root of the verb used? In what tense only is the second principal part used? [Remember that the second principal part of a verb is used only in the past tense, indicative and subjunctive modes, active voice.] In what tenses is the third principal part used? What form of the verb requires the use of the present active participle? The past participle?

How is the imperative mode formed? The present infinitive? The perfect infinitive? The present participle? The past participle? The perfect participle? The present indicative? The past indicative? The future indicative? The present perfect indicative? The past perfect indicative? The future perfect indicative? The present potential? The past potential? The present perfect potential? The past perfect potential? The present subjunctive? The past subjunctive?

Give the first person singular in each tense of the indicative, active, common form, of the verbs *write*, *come*, *have*, *be*, *see*, *love*, *hate*. Give the emphatic forms of these verbs. Give the second person singular, common form, indicative mode, active voice, of each of these verbs. Give the third person. The first person plural.

## Lesson 210.

### BREVITY.

*Brevity in writing is a main element of force.*

Be careful not to repeat the same word needlessly, nor the same meaning in different words.

*The time* for learning is *in the time of* youth.
*The time* for learning is *in the period of* youth.

In these two sentences the italicized words are the same, or have the same meaning. Omitting the superfluous words, the sentences become: "Youth is the time for learning."

Omit all superfluous words in these sentences: —

A second round was again fired.

An idle man is generally looked upon with eyes of distrust and aversion.

Every man on the face of the earth has duties to perform.

Before you write you must first think what to say.

I looked for mistakes throughout the whole essay, but could find none.

He seldom ever has his lesson.

The past two months have brought us an abundant plenty of rain.

For the first time he gazed upon the limitless expanse of the boundless prairie.

Is it the universal desire of all in the class to have a half-holiday?

She has a very winsome and charming manner, although her face is plain and not handsome.

By the Portuguese law every person is legally obliged to join the army.

I like the old original tongue best.

## Lesson 211.

### BUSINESS FORMS.

Providence, R.I., March 15, 1890, James M. Smith buys of Levi W. Robinson one bay mare for $300, a covered carriage for $225, harness for $25, sleigh for $40, lap robe for $5, whip for $1.25. He gives in payment a note of Geo. E. Brown for $500; balance on account. Make out James M. Smith's bill and Geo. E. Brown's note.

After twenty days Levi W. Robinson draws on James M. Smith at thirty days' sight, for the amount due. He makes the draft in favor of Albert J. Mason. Write the draft. Accept it. Albert J. Mason turns the draft over to J. Milton Jones. Make the indorsement.

## Lesson 212.

### REVIEW OF CONJUGATION.

Give the third person singular of the tenses of the potential mode, active voice, of the verbs *lay, set, raise, do.*

Change to the passive form, to the progressive, to the interrogative, to the negative.

Give the active infinitives of the verbs *get*, *freeze*, *drink*, *dig*, *hold*. Give the passive infinitives of these verbs, the active participles, the passive participles.

Give the negative, interrogative, active form of the present indicative of the verbs *love*, *fear*, *trust*, *teach*. Change to the negative, interrogative, passive. Change to emphatic, interrogative. Change to negative, emphatic, interrogative.

Write a sentence containing the verb *bring* active, indicative, past, third person, plural. Change the verb to the corresponding passive form.

Write the verb *find* in the various forms, common, emphatic, passive, and progressive, using in each form the third person singular of the past tense.

## Lesson 213.

### ESSAYS.

The Senses. — How many senses are there? What is the organ of each? What do we learn or what do we enjoy by means of each? Which do you think is the most precious?

The Seasons. — What are the causes of the seasons? How do the seasons of our country differ from those in tropical countries? From those of the frigid zones? Describe the appearance of our country in each season. What employments and games are suitable for each season? Which season do you like the best? Why?

## Lesson 214.

### DUTIES OF A SECRETARY.

At the opening of each session of the body of which he is an officer, the secretary should hand to the president an order of business for the session and a statement of what matters of business are to be considered.

At the meetings the secretary is to read all that he may be called upon to read by the president, and when necessary he is to call the roll of members. It is his duty to give all parties concerned due notice of the action of the body.

The chief duty of a secretary or clerk is to make true records of what is done in the meetings of his society or organization. He is not a reporter, and it is not his business to report speeches or opinions, but only the action of the meeting. This record will include negative as well as affirmative votes, but will not include what is proposed and not voted upon.

It is usual to have the records of each meeting made up by the secretary, and approved by the president soon after the close of each session. At the opening of the next session these records are read by the secretary for approval by the meeting. At this reading any member may call attention to errors and omissions; and the president [chairman] then directs what changes are to be made, if he can do this by general consent. If objections are made to the corrections that are proposed, the corrections must be made by motion as amendments.

## Lesson 215.

### BREVITY.

Brevity, and hence force, may be secured —

1. By the omission of conjunctions which are readily understood; as, —

Break the latch; [and] force open the door.

2. By not repeating with each verb a subject common to several; as, —

He rushed amidst them with his sword drawn, [he] threw them into confusion, [he] pushed his advantage, and [he] obtained a complete victory.

3. By not repeating with each verb an object common to several; as, —

All desire [a happy old age], but not many attain, a happy old age.

4. By omitting in the last part of a sentence a verb which has been expressed in the first part; as, —

Reading makes a full man; conference [makes] a ready man; and writing [makes] an exact man.

Make the following sentences more brief and forcible by omission of words: —

The Egyptians gave us architecture and agriculture; the Hebrews gave us religion; the Hindoos gave us philosophy; the Arabs gave us mathematics; the Chinese gave us filial reverence; the Greeks gave us beauty; the Romans gave us law.

Charles Dickens, a noted English novelist, was born in 1812; and he died in 1870.

It is by instinct that birds build their nests, and bees build their honeycombs, and beavers build their dams and huts.

The general praised his soldiers and rewarded them.

The guide could not speak German so well as he could speak French.

Then he refused to go, and now he begs permission to do so.

After he had disposed of his merchandise he bought a cargo of grain, and he then set sail, and he came to another port where he soon sold this second cargo.

Is there anything in the world more active than water as it rushes along in the swift brook, or as it spouts up in the fountain, or as it trickles down from the roof?

Be ready to aid such people as need help and deserve help.

Death does not spare the rich, and as little does death spare the poor.

In his family he was dignified and gentle, and in his public life he was dignified and gentle also.

The nights were cool, and the days, too, were cool.

One sun shines by day, by night ten thousand suns shine.

The shrub is taller than the flower which grows in its shade; the tree is taller than the shrub; the rock is taller than the tree; the mountain is taller than the single rock; and above all are the sun and the heavens.

## Lesson 216.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Tea and coffee. Ginger and cinnamon.

Cotton and linen.

## Lesson 217.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

In the exercise which follows something more than a paraphrase should be attempted. The paraphrase should be but the warp to which is added a woof of further particulars in harmony with the original statements.

Endeavor to produce in your mind a clear and definite picture of the scene described in the poem. Fill this mental picture with further items, perhaps expand it to a wider scene, then, using the language of the poem or not, as seems best, write freely a full description of the scene as it is now pictured to your mind.

#### The Tavern.

I could paint the White-Hawk tavern flanked
With broken and wind-warped sheds,
And the rock where the black clouds used to sit
And trim their watery heads
With little sparkles of shining light,
Night and morning, morning and night.

The road, where slow and wearily,
The dusty teamster came, —
The sign on its post, and the round-faced host,
And the high-arched door, aflame
With trumpet-flowers, — the well-sweep, high,
And the flowing water-trough, close by.

Alice Cary.

## Lesson 218.

### PARSING VERBS.

In parsing verbs tell whether each is regular or irregular, transitive or intransitive; give the voice, mode, tense, number, and person; and name the subject with which it agrees.

I live here.

In this sentence, *live* is a regular verb. It is intransitive, and hence has no voice. It is in the indicative mode, present tense; and is in the first person, singular number, to agree with its subject *I*.

Parse the verbs in the following sentences: —

I am not what I was. Strike the iron while it is hot. The bird flew away. It froze last night. If I were he I would not go. We have been sent to you.

The rain descended, the floods came, the winds blew and beat upon that house, and it fell.

Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin: and yet I say unto you, that Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.

## Lesson 219.

### SECRETARY'S RECORDS.

You are the secretary of a school club called "The Daily Doings Club." Your record of the first meeting may be as follows: —

HOUGHTON SCHOOL, EAST SAGINAW, MICH.,
*Sept.* 19, 1884.

At the call of their teacher, the pupils of Room 1, Houghton School, assembled in their school-room at 4 P.M. this day, to organize a club for the purpose of keeping themselves informed respecting current events. The meeting was organized by electing Mr. Alfred Smith president and Miss Rosa Brown secretary.

After the purpose and methods of such an organization had been explained by the teacher, Miss Frank, several pupils spoke in favor of the plan; and it was at last unanimously voted to organize such a club.

A committee, consisting of Miss Mary Steinart, Miss Belle Stevens, and Mr. Joseph Moore, was appointed to prepare a constitution and by-laws to be reported to the club at its next meeting.

On motion of Miss Sarah Peters, it was voted that all pupils of Room 1, Houghton School, should be members of this club. It was voted upon motion of Mr. Samuel Latham that the present president and secretary should serve until the permanent organization of the club. The meeting then adjourned to meet at 4 P.M. on Tuesday next, Sept. 26, 1884.

ROSA BROWN,
*Secretary.*

A true record of proceedings.

Attest: ALFRED SMITH,
*President.*

Write in form somewhat similar to the foregoing the records of the first meeting of a school debating society.

The boys of the class may write the record of a meeting for the purpose of organizing a base-ball club; the girls, a society for the prevention of cruelty to animals.

## Lesson 220.

### BREVITY.

*Brevity, and hence force, are secured by using a word instead of a phrase, a word or phrase instead of a clause.*

Make the following sentences more brief and forcible: —

The soil in this region is of such a nature that little can be raised. [A more forcible sentence would be, The soil in this region is barren.]

A spoon which was made of wood and a plate which was made of pewter were his only utensils. [A wooden spoon and a pewter plate were his only utensils.]

The event was one that brought surprise to all.

When he heard of the dangerous position in which we were placed, he hastened at once to our relief.

The noise of feet that seemed in a great hurry was heard.

The rains which we have had of late, and which have been so heavy, have caused the waters of the rivers to overflow their banks.

The seasons, as they change, bring us a variety of fruit.

Have you ever read "Little Men"? It was written by Louisa Alcott.

When we were at Boston, we went one day to Cambridge. It is in Cambridge that Harvard University is situated. In that city also is to be seen Longfellow's house.

As he walked toward the bridge, he met his old friend the Captain.

The ostrich is unable to fly, because it has not wings in proportion to its body.

When darkness broke away, and morning began to dawn, the town wore a strange aspect indeed.

Persons that are inclined to be quarrelsome are despised.

If he had possessed a sufficient amount of patience, he might have succeeded.

Egypt is a fertile country, and is watered by the river Nile, and is annually inundated by it.

As I did not know that you had returned from your vacation, I did not call.

## Lesson 221.

### SYNONYMS.

Use each of these words in a sentence: —

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| delightful | pretty | excellent | handsome | lovely |
| elegant | pleasing | pleasant | agreeable | nice |
| beautiful | splendid | magnificent | grand | superb |
| majestic | palatial | charming | exquisite | fine |

Find as many words as you can that may be used instead of *horrid*.

## Lesson 222.

### ESSAYS.

LEATHER. — From what is leather made? With what is it tanned? What are its properties? What are its uses?

THE EYE. — What is the shape, and what are the parts of the eye? What peculiarity is there about the size of the pupil? What motions has the eye? How is it protected? Of what use are eyelashes and eyebrows? Of what use are tears? What are some of the things which should not be done to the eyes?

## Lesson 223.

### SECRETARY'S RECORDS.

The record of the second meeting of The Daily Doings Club (see page 188) would begin as follows: —

HOUGHTON SCHOOL, EAST SAGINAW, MICH.,
*Sept.* 26, 1884.

The Daily Doings Club met in Room 1, Houghton School, at 4 P.M., Sept. 26, 1884, the president in the chair.

The minutes of the previous meeting were read by the secretary, and approved.

Write out the remainder of the proceedings, sign, and attest as before.

## Lesson 224.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of: —

Jacob and Esau. Moses and Elijah.
Alfred the Great and Peter the Great.

## Lesson 225.

### DISTINCTION BETWEEN ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

It is sometimes difficult to tell whether an adjective or an adverb should follow a verb.

If the word following the verb denotes some quality or

condition of the subject, either in itself or as affected by the action indicated in the verb, it should be an adjective; as, —

The boy is ill. He hopes to become well again.

The weather is cold. The sky looks cold, and the frozen ground feels cold to the barefoot boy.

The door is green. The grass grows green. The door is painted green.

If the word following the verb denotes manner, time, place, or degree, and modifies the verb rather than the subject, it is an adverb.

Allan looks steadily [adverb] on his book.

He looked tired [adjective].

He felt carefully [adverb] and found that the knife felt sharp [adjective].

She looks coldly at him [adverb].

He arrived safe [adjective].

He arrived early [adverb].

He arrived at the grounds [adverbial phrase].

He sat silent [adjective].

He sat quietly [adverb].

He sat quiet and silent.

Use each of these verbs in a sentence with one of the adjectives or one of the adverbs from the accompanying lists: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tastes | acts | seems | should be |
| sings | saw | feels | writes |
| works | talks | looks | speaks |
| was | moves | felt | smell |
| am | sounds | shines | arrived |
| will be | came | appeared | looks |

ADJECTIVES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sweet | faithful | neat | kind |
| rough | harsh | unkind | pretty |
| smooth | tired | even | correct |
| true | sad | charming | angry |

ADVERBS.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sweetly | smoothly | roughly | truly |
| harshly | kindly | elegantly | peacefully |
| prettily | quickly | charmingly | thankfully |

## Lesson 226.

### COMPARISON OF STYLE.

Compare the two following selections. Observe that the shorter one contains all the ideas of the longer, and is the more pleasing because of its brevity.

In a long ramble of the kind, on a fine autumnal day, Rip had unconsciously scrambled to one of the highest parts of the Kaatskill Mountains. He was after his favorite sport of squirrel shooting, and the still solitudes had echoed and re-echoed with the reports of his gun. Panting and fatigued, he threw himself, late in the afternoon, on a green knoll covered with mountain herbage, that crowned the brow of a precipice. WASHINGTON IRVING.

Rip suddenly found himself upon one of the highest parts of the Kaatskill Mountains. It was a beautiful day in autumn when the sun was shining brightly, not a cloud was to be seen, and Nature had on her most brilliant robe. Rip had been

wandering about for a long time, hither and thither, and he had come upon this place almost without knowing it. He had roamed about in this way, without heeding which way he was going, because he was out hunting squirrels, which was his favorite out-of-doors sport, and long had been, and the shots from his gun had awakened echo after echo and thus disturbed the calm stillness of the place. The afternoon was waning fast, and he was tired and exhausted, so he decided to rest, and threw himself down upon a little knoll that was so covered with verdure as to offer a comfortable seat, although it overlooked an immense yawning precipice.

Write the second selection in your own language and then compare what you have written with the first selection.

## Lesson 227.

### CONSTITUTION AND BY-LAW.

The constitution and the by-laws of a society are usually reported by a committee appointed for the purpose.

Write the report of the committee appointed to frame the constitution and by-laws of The Daily Doings Club. See page 188. The following form will be of service: —

To the Members of The Daily Doings Club: —

Your committee, appointed at a meeting for the preliminary organization of The Daily Doings Club, would respectfully submit the following articles and by-laws, with the recommendation that they be adopted as the constitution and by-laws of this society.

Article I.

Section I. The name of this society shall be ——.

Section II. Its purpose shall be ——.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. Any pupil —— may become a member of this society ——.

SECTION II. ——.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. The officers of this society shall be ——.

SECTION II. The president shall be ——.

ARTICLE IV.

Regular meetings of this society shall be held ——.

ARTICLE V.

This constitution may be altered or amended ——.

BY-LAWS.

1. FEES. [Here may be inserted some rule in reference to fees of members.]

2. INVITATIONS. [Here may be inserted the conditions on which persons not members may be invited to attend the meetings.]

3. [Here may be inserted any rule that the writer deems necessary.]

All of which is respectfully submitted.

.....
.....
.....
} Committee.

## Lesson 228.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

See directions on page 144.

THE MILL.

The miller's face, half smile, half frown,
Were a picture I could paint;

And the mill, with gable steep and brown,
And dripping wheel aslant,
The weather-beaten door, set wide,
And the heaps of meal-bags either side.

The timbers cracked to gaping seams,
The swallows' clay-built nests,
And the rows of doves that sit on the beams
With plump and glossy breasts,
The bear by his post sitting upright to eat,
With half of his clumsy legs in his feet.

ALICE CARY.

## Lesson 229.

### CONTRASTED DESCRIPTION.

Write a contrasted description of: —

New York and Chicago. London and Paris.
St. Petersburg and Berlin.

## Lesson 230.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Washington was a native of Virginia.
2. Washington was the first president of the United States.

These sentences may be combined thus: —

3. Washington was a native of Virginia, and he was the first president of the United States.
4. Washington, who was the first president of the United States, was a native of Virginia.

In the fourth sentence the word *who* takes the place of the words *and he* in the third sentence. What use has the word *and* in the third sentence? What use has the word *he?* What uses, then, has the word *who?* [*Ans.* It is the subject of the clause "who was the first president of the United States," and connects this clause to the noun "Washington," for which it stands.]

The picture has been very much admired.
It was painted by Mr. Brown.

These sentences may be combined thus: —

The picture has been very much admired, and it was painted by Mr. Brown.

This is not a pleasing sentence, and we would prefer to say: —

The picture which was painted by Mr. Brown has been very much admired.

What pronoun is there in the last sentence? What is its antecedent? How many clauses are there in the sentence? What are they? In which clause does *which* stand? To what does it connect this clause?

**A pronoun which connects the clause in which it stands to its antecedent is a relative pronoun.**

The words most frequently used as relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*. *Who* is used to represent persons; *which*, to represent animals or things; and *that* is used in the place of *who* or *which*.

*Who*, *which*, and *that* connect clauses by showing the relation of the clauses in which they stand to their antecedents.

*What* connects clauses by belonging to both of them; as,

I will give you what you need.

Here *what* is the object of *will give* and also the object of *need*. Its use is most readily understood by substituting for it its equivalent, *the thing which* or *that which;* as, —

I will give you the thing which you need.

*That* should be used instead of *who* or *which:* —

First, when it follows *who;* as, —

Who that hears can fail to understand this?

Second, when the antecedent represents both persons and things; as, —

The musician and his dancing bear that you saw have just come to town.

Third, when the clause which it introduces restricts or defines its antecedent; as, —

They that persevere will win.

Fourth, when its antecedent is modified by *no*, *all*, *any*, *each*, *every*, *same*, *very*, or an adjective in the superlative degree; as, —

It is the very reason that I mentioned.
It is the bravest men that are the most gentle.

The fourth statement is really included in the third.

[*As* following *such*, and *but* in such constructions as "There was no one but did his best," are by some considered relative pronouns.]

## Lesson 231.

### CLEARNESS.

Clearness is an element of style more important than brevity. If you cannot be both brief and clear, by all means be clear even though not brief.

*Whenever it is necessary for the sake of clearness, repeat an antecedent, a subject, a verb or an auxiliary, or a preposition.*

Explain why each of the following sentences would not be clear if the words in parenthesis were omitted: —

The firemen carried out the piano, (a precaution) which was unnecessary. [Here the antecedent of *which,* "a precaution," must be retained, or the sentence would be ambiguous, for it might be understood that the piano was unnecessary.]

The pilot of our boat saw the light sooner than the other pilot (saw it).

Ignorance is the mother of fear as well as (of) admiration.

He declared he would not come, (a refusal) which I quite expected.

The valley of the Amazon is perhaps as large as (that of) the Mississippi.

A squirrel can climb a tree quicker than a boy (can).

Supply the omitted words and make corrections in the following sentences: —

There's an omnibus goes to every train.

There's a man below desires to speak to you.

Here's the buttons you sent.

There's a lawn and orchard near the house.

The family is as poor, or poorer, than the one you have already aided.

## Lesson 232.

### AMENDMENTS.

An amendment to any motion, resolution, by-law, or constitution may propose to add certain words, to strike out words, or to strike out certain words and insert others. It is usually provided that amendments to the constitution or by-laws of a society must be presented in writing at a meeting previous to the one on which action upon the proposed amendment is sought.

Give notice of an amendment proposed to the constitution of The Daily Doings Club, by filling out the following form: —

I hereby give notice that at the next [regular, annual] meeting of this society I shall propose the following amendment to the constitution: —

From Article ....., Section ....., to strike out the words ..... ..... and insert ....., so that the section shall read .....

OLIVE THORNTON.

If two or more persons join in such a notice, the word *I* in the form above would become *We*, and each name would be signed at the close of the notice.

## Lesson 233.

### ESSAYS.

FAIRY TALES. — Name some of the fairy tales which you have enjoyed. Relate one of them.

BATTLE. — Give the events which led to some famous battle. Tell what you can about the battle. Mention the results which followed from it.

EARTHQUAKES. — Where are earthquakes of frequent occurrence? How are they caused? Mention some famous earthquakes, and tell about one of them.

## Lesson 234.

### COMPOUND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Whoso*, *what*, and its compounds with *ever* and *soever*, and the compounds of *who* and *which* with the same words, are used to introduce clauses referring to an indefinite person or thing. They are called compound relative pronouns.

Make a list of the compound relative pronouns.

Select the compound relative pronouns in the following sentences. Tell to what each is equivalent, and state the construction of the antecedent part and the relative part.

Whoever is idle will fail.
Whatever is evil should be avoided.
What I want is not what I shall get.
Sell it for what you can get.
Whosoever will may come.
This is what you want.
Give it to whoever applies for it.
Give me whichever you please.
Whatsoever God doeth shall be forever.
Whoso findeth wisdom, findeth life.

## Lesson 235.

### SECRETARY'S NOTICES.

The secretary should notify the chairman of every committee of his appointment, and should furnish to him a list of the other members, with a statement of the matters referred to this committee. He should also notify each member of the committee of his appointment thereon, and give the name of the chairman.

During a meeting of which you were secretary, it was voted to have a public debate on the last Friday of the month, and James Tirrel, chairman, William Halcross, and Robert Ames were appointed a committee to make the necessary arrangements. Notify each of these persons of this action.

The following form will be of service. Make the needed changes.

THE DOYLE AVE. GRAMMAR SCHOOL DEBATING CLUB,
PROVIDENCE, R.I., *Dec.* 19, 1889.

MR. WILLIAM HALCROSS:

At the meeting of the Doyle Ave. Grammar School Debating Club, held Dec. 18, 1889, you were elected a member of the committee on public debates, of which committee James Tirrel is chairman.

Yours respectfully,

H. S. TURNER, *Secretary.*

The Daily Doings Club has had its annual election of officers. As secretary, notify the several officers of their election.

## Lesson 236.

### PARTICULAR TERMS.

Learn to use specific, or particular, and not general terms, to give names and dates, and all details needful to the exact realization of the scene or the thought.

Do not say *go*, but *travel* or *ride*. Do not say "In a certain city," but "In the lower part of New York." Do not say "Once upon a time," but "In the summer of 1776."

St. Paul says: "I have coveted no man's silver or gold or apparel; nay, ye yourselves know that these hands have ministered to my necessities and to them that were with me." This is more forcible than, "I have coveted no one's possessions, but have by my own efforts obtained a livelihood for myself and my companions."

Macaulay is a master of the art of using details. Notice this description of Benares. Such a style is delightful to a reader who has imagination and leisure.

His first design was upon Benares, a city, which, in wealth, population, dignity, and sanctity, was among the foremost of Asia. It was commonly believed that half a million of human beings was crowded into that labyrinth of lofty alleys, rich with shrines, and minarets, and balconies, and carved oriels, to which the sacred apes clung by hundreds. The traveller could scarcely make his way through the press of holy mendicants and not less holy bulls. The broad and stately flights of steps which descended from these swarming haunts to the bathing places along the Ganges, were worn every day by the footsteps of an innumerable multitude of worshippers. The schools and temples drew crowds of pious Hindoos from every

province where the Brahminical faith was known. Commerce had as many pilgrims as religion. All along the shores of the venerable stream lay great fleets of vessels laden with rich merchandise. From the looms of Benares went forth the most delicate silks that adorned the halls of St. James's and of the Petit Trianon; and in the bazaars the muslins of Bengal and the sabres of Oude were mingled with the jewels of Golconda and the shawls of Cashmere.

MACAULAY.

## Lesson 237.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**The interrogative pronouns are *who, which,* and *what;* as, —**

Who comes there? Which do you prefer?
What is the matter?

The antecedent of an interrogative pronoun is sought by the question in which the pronoun is used, and should be given in the answer. The antecedent of the interrogative should be given in the answer in the same case that the pronoun had in the question.

*Who* comes there? *I.* [Not me.]
*Whose* is this? It is *mine.*
To *whom* will you give it? I will give it to *her.*

*Who*, *which*, and *what* are interrogative or relative pronouns according to their use.

*Which*, with its possessive *whose*, and *what*, are often used as interrogative adjectives also; as, —

Which book will you take? Whose hat is that?
What kind of a man is he?

DECLENSION.

| SING. AND PLUR. | | SING. AND PLUR. |
|---|---|---|
| *Nom.* | who | which |
| *Poss.* | whose | whose |
| *Obj.* | whom | which |

*Whose* is used both as an adjective and as a pronoun. *That* is indeclinable. Of the compound relatives, *what* and its compounds are indeclinable. The compound forms of *who* and *which* are declined like the simple forms.

Decline the compounds of *who* and *which*.

## Lesson 238.

### DESCRIPTION.

A DESCRIPTION OF SOME ONE YOU KNOW.

Describe some one whom you know, by answering the following questions about him or her: —

1. What is his age?
2. What is his size?
3. What are his features?
4. What is his complexion?
5. How does he appear?
6. What is his disposition?
7. How does he spend his time?
8. What are his talents?
9. What are his virtues?
10. What are his failings?
11. What other characteristics has he?

## Lesson 239.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

THE LIME-BURNERS.

I could paint the lonesome lime-kilns,
And the lime-burners, wild and proud,
Their red sleeves gleaming in the smoke
Like a rainbow in a cloud, —
Their huts by the brook, and their mimicking crew —
Making believe to be lime-burners, too!

ALICE CARY.

Of what is a lime-kiln made? How does it look? Why are the lime-kilns called "lonesome"? Why are the lime-burners called "wild and proud"? How can their sleeves in the midst of the smoke be compared to a rainbow in a cloud? Who are meant by the "mimicking crew"?

Describe the picture you would make if you should "paint the lonesome lime-kilns and the lime-burners."

## Lesson 240.

### ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. This day is a fine day.
2. This is a fine day.

In the first sentence *this* is an adjective modifying *day*. In the second, it represents both words, *this* and *day*, and is an *adjective pronoun*, subject of the verb *is*.

**A word used both as an adjective and as a noun is called an adjective pronoun.**

Name the limiting adjectives in the sentences below. What noun does each modify? Name the adjective pronouns in these sentences. What noun does each represent? Of what case and construction is each?

One person was taken, and another person left.
One was taken, and another left.
Each pupil will be called upon to recite.
Each will be called upon to recite.
Many are called, but few are chosen.
All may do what man has done.
Those who try to do something and fail are infinitely better than those who try to do nothing and succeed.

The words *mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs* are equivalent to *my*, *thy*, *her*, *our*, *your*, and *their*, respectively, together with a noun, and are used as pronouns in the nominative and objective cases. They are sometimes called possessive adjective pronouns.

Other adjectives sometimes represent both themselves and the nouns they modify. In this use their character as nouns is indicated by putting *the* before them; as, —

The good are happy. The first are the best.
None but the brave deserve the fair.

## Lesson 241.

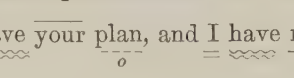
### ANALYSIS.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. You have your plan, and I have mine. 2. I will take my method, and you may use yours. 3. Thine is the kingdom.

4. Mary has brought her work, but Lucy has left hers. 5. I will sell my land, but I will not buy theirs. 6. This house is ours. 7. I would not change my place for theirs. 8. His house was not ours, nor was ours his. 9. All mine is thine.

Parse the possessive pronouns in the foregoing sentences.




## Lesson 242.

### THE SIMILE.

That sentence or paragraph is clear from which the reader can easily and fully obtain the thought presented. He will be helped in this by showing him in what respects that about which we write is like or unlike other things well known. The suitable use of comparison adds clearness, force, and beauty to composition.

1. She has very white teeth.
2. Her teeth are like pearl.

In one of these sentences a comparison is used to express the thought which in the other is expressed directly.

**A direct comparison between objects of different kinds is called a simile.**

"Her teeth are like pearl" is a simile.

"He is as brave as a lion" is a simile, while "He is as patient as Job" is not a simile, but simply a comparison, because the comparison is made between two persons and not between a person and a thing or between things of different kinds.

In a simile the comparison is limited to one point, and is generally expressed with the words *like* or *as*.

Study the sentences which follow. Tell what things are compared. Find all the similes.

His eyes were as a flame of fire, and his voice as the sound of many waters.

The righteous shall flourish like the palm tree; he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon.

The man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water.

Honesty without principle is like a mirage in the desert, a lake without water.

He that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, driven with the wind and tossed.

Mercy is like the sunshine; it cheers where it shines.

A man in anger is like a chariot without a driver, or a ship in a storm without a pilot.

As the morning sun dispels mist and darkness, so a cheerful countenance dispels the troubles of a vexed mind.

He above the rest, in shape and gesture proudly eminent, stood like a tower.

## Lesson 243.

### NOTICE OF REFERENCE.

THE HIGH SCHOOL OUTING CLUB,
OFFICE OF SECRETARY, BANGOR, ME.,
*June* 5, 1891.

HAROLD F. FRELINGHUYSEN,
*Chairman of the Committee on Finance,*
High School Outing Club.

DEAR SIR: At a meeting of the Bangor High School Outing Club the question of an excursion to Moosehead Lake

was referred to the finance committee, to report what the probable cost of such an excursion would be, and whether the condition of the finances of the club will warrant the necessary expenditure.

You are requested to report at the next regular meeting.

Yours truly,

GEORGE W. GERALD,
*Secretary.*

Write a notice of a reference to a committee of The Daily Doings Club, of some matter to be reported upon by the committee.

## Lesson 244.

### ESSAYS.

ANALYSIS. — Write full and definite instructions as to the way in which a sentence should be analyzed. Analyze the first sentence of your composition as an example.

SPELLING. — Why is good spelling important? Describe a spelling-match.

CHINESE. — Give as full a description as you can of the appearance, habits, and food of the Chinese.

## Lesson 245.

### AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS WITH THEIR ANTECEDENTS.

In what respects do pronouns agree with their antecedents?

The agreement in number of pronouns with their ante-

cedents follows the rules given for the agreement in number of verbs with their subjects. See page 129.

If a pronoun has two or more antecedents of different persons, it should be of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as, —

Ellen and I have our books.

You and Harold may fold your hands.

Tell the antecedent of each pronoun in the following sentences, and state why the pronoun has the number, person, and gender that it has: —

He was fond of nothing more than of wit and raillery, but he was far from successful in them.

Every one should forgive his enemy.

You and I must correct our exercises, or we shall lose our credit.

One or the other of these boys must give up his claim.

Every pupil may learn his lesson.

The multitude, with all their means of instruction, are ignorant.

The public are invited, and we promise them much pleasure.

You and Laura must give up your plan.

Ethel and I have made up our minds.

Neither of them has any knowledge of this study.

Each of the concerts occurs on Monday.

## Lesson 246.

### REPORTS OF COMMITTEES.

At a meeting of the Bangor High School Outing Club the advisability of an excursion, etc., was referred to the finance committee.

The report of the committee might be as follows: —

Bangor, Me., June 12, 1891.

To the Outing Club of the Bangor High School:

The committee on finance, to whom on the 5th day of the present month was referred the question of a proposed excursion to Moosehead Lake, with instructions to ascertain the probable cost of such an excursion, and to report whether the condition of the finances of the club is such as to warrant this expenditure, respectfully report,

That they have given due attention to the matter referred to them, and find that a special car seating sixty persons, etc., etc.

Respectfully submitted,
For the Committee,
Harold F. Frelinghuysen,
*Chairman.*

Copy and complete the report above.

## Lesson 247.

### SIMILES.

Here are some similes: —

As hard as a rock.
As sly as a fox.

Write ten similes containing *as*.

Here are more similes: —

It stirs the heart like the sound of a trumpet.
His words fell soft like snow upon the ground.
He came in smiling like a summer morning.

Write ten similes containing *like*.

## Lesson 248.

### AGREEMENT.

In each of the following sentences which form of the verb and of the pronoun is correct? Write the sentences as they should be written.

The assembly [was, were] divided in [its, their] opinions.

A circle, a square, or a triangle [pleases, please] the eye by [its, their] regularity.

Neither Albert nor Wallace [has, have] finished [his, their] task.

The British Parliament [is, are] composed of Queen, Lords, and Commons.

The Congress of the United States [consists, consist] of a Senate and a House of Representatives.

What case [has, have] each of the nouns?

## Lesson 249.

### SYNONYMS.

*Farther* is used with reference to distance; *further* is used with reference to quantity or degree.

*Contemptuous* means expressing contempt; *contemptible* means deserving contempt.

Explain the difference in meaning between "a contemptuous remark" and "a contemptible remark."

Copy these sentences, selecting the right word from those in brackets: —

I shall say nothing [farther, further].

What [farther, further] proof do you need?

How much [farther, further] must we go?

Which is [further, farther] from here, New York or Boston?

Do you wish to hear anything [farther, further] on this subject?

Her face wore a [contemptuous, contemptible] expression as she turned away from those [contemptuous, contemptible] people.

His first remark was a [contemptible, contemptuous] one, showing that he considered the matter of little consequence; the second was truly [contemptuous, contemptible], and deserved the scorn with which it was treated.

He gave a [contemptuous, contemptible] look at the [contemptuous, contemptible] sum offered for his bravery.

They expressed a very [contemptuous, contemptible] opinion of such baseness.

## Lesson 250.

### ESSAYS

THE SENATE AND THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES. — Of how many men does the Senate consist? The House of Representatives? How many senators are there from each State? How many representatives from each State? How is a senator chosen? A representative? How long does each hold office? Where do these legislators meet? What is the difference between the duties of a senator and those of a representative?

A FOREIGN STREET. — Describe a street in Japan or in India, giving the appearance of the houses, the shops, and the people.

A River. — Describe any river you choose, tracing it from its source to its mouth, and naming the important places along its banks.

## Lesson 251.

### DIALOGUE.

Write a conversation between two boys of different schools about a foot-ball game in which the schools participated.

## Lesson 252.

### FIGURES OF SPEECH.

The term *figure* signifies the form or shape of an object. The square, the triangle, the circle, etc., are plane figures. One whose actions are so great or so remarkable that they stand out before the mind in a distinct form of their own is said to make a figure in the world. In a similar way an expression which departs from ordinary forms of speech is called a figure of speech, or a rhetorical figure. The language in figures may be said to have a figurative use. The simile is a rhetorical figure which we have already studied.

1. She is very pleasant.
2. Her manners are like sunshine.
3. The sunshine of her manners pleases all.

These sentences have much the same meaning. Which of them contains a simile?

In the third sentence we do not say directly that her manners are like sunshine, but we lead our readers to think so; in other words, we imply it. *The sunshine of her manners* is an implied comparison.

**An implied comparison is called a metaphor.**

A metaphor is a rhetorical figure, and its language is figurative language.

## Lesson 253.

### CLAUSES AND CONNECTIVES.

The term *element* in grammar means a word, a phrase, or a clause that has a distinct use of its own. [See page 43.]

Elements are co-ordinate when they are of the same rank, or are used in the same way. When one element is used to modify another, the element which is modified is called the principal element, and the modifier is called the subordinate element.

Clauses may be connected with others of equal rank, or they may be connected to a word in another clause.

When a clause is connected to a word, it is subordinate to that word, and the clause in which the modified word stands is called a principal clause.

We may give advice, but we cannot give conduct.

Here the two clauses are of equal rank, neither modifying the other. They are called co-ordinate clauses.

When numbers are expressed in words, they are usually left unpointed.

Here the clause *When numbers are expressed in words* is connected to the word *unpointed*. It is therefore a subordinate clause, and the clause *they are left unpointed* is the principal clause.

A subordinate clause is always used as though it were a noun, an adjective, or an adverb; and hence is called a noun clause, an adjective clause, or an adverbial clause, according to its use.

The words most frequently used as co-ordinate conjunctions are *and*, *but*, *for*, *or*, *nor*, *therefore*.

The words most frequently used as subordinate conjunctions are *as*, *because*, *before*, *for*, *since*, *so*, *though*, *that*, *till*, *until*, *unless*, *if*, *after*, *although*, *except*.

In the following sentences what clauses are co-ordinate? By what kind of conjunctions are they connected? Which are the subordinate clauses? Which are the subordinate conjunctions? Which are the principal clauses?

Hurry is the mark of a weak mind, but despatch is the mark of a strong one.

The good which men do is not lost, though it is often disregarded.

Our blessings are the least heeded, because they are the most common events of life.

A clownish air is only a small defect; yet it is enough to make a man disagreeable.

It is true that we are never too old to be taught.

Make a proper use of your time; for the loss of it can never be repaired.

War is the law of violence, while peace is the law of love.

That which cannot be cured must be endured.

Remember Davy Crocket's advice, *Look before you leap.*

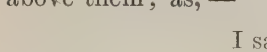
## Lesson 254.

### ANALYSIS. — CO-ORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. I saw James and John. 2. I saw James or John. 3. I did not see James, but John. 4. My days and nights were filled with joy and peace. 5. The fox ran across the meadow and up the hill. 6. I and My Father are one. 7. Neither the boy nor his father was present. 8. I will either go immediately or send some one. 9. Both the girl and her mother denied all knowledge of the affair. 10. Napoleon commenced his career a stranger by birth and a scholar by charity.

Co-ordinate connectives may be indicated by the sign + above them; as, —




## Lesson 255.

### REPORT OF COMMITTEES.

To the Honorable the City Council of the City of Atlanta:

The Joint Committee to which on the 4th day of April, 1889, was referred a resolution ..... respectfully report, That .....

Respectfully submitted,
For the Committee,

.....
*Chairman.*

Copy and complete the form above.

Write a report of a special committee.

In case the several members of the committee are to sign the report, the form of closing would become: —

Respectfully submitted,

HORACE ANDERSON, *Chairman,*
DAVID STOWELL, *Secretary,*
ANDREW NICHOLSON,
MARTIN VAN BUREN,
} *Committee.*

## Lesson 256.

### DESCRIPTION.

Probably you can now write more extended and complete descriptions than you have yet done. Study the outline and the notes, and from them write a second description of the apple.

THE APPLE. [No. 2.]

OUTLINE
1. Kind, or species.
2. Distribution.
3. Growth.
4. Description of parts.
5. Uses.

NOTES. — Fruit long cultivated — introduced by Romans into England — wild crab-apple tree, small and stunted, the parent of all varieties — varieties numerous — grows best in

colder parts of temperate zone — found also on coasts of Mediterranean Sea, in Arabia, Persia, West Indies — propagated by grafting, sometimes by layers and cuttings — requires fertile soil and sheltered place — early and late apples — greatest height of tree thirty or forty feet — wood of tree hard and close-grained — leaves broadly ovate, woolly beneath, acutely notched — flowers in cluster, large, white, rose-colored externally, fragrant — fruit roundish, narrowest towards apex, depression at each end, hard and firm — color various, green, yellow, light or dark red, streaked, brown, and almost black — rind downy, smooth, thick or thin, and almost transparent — average size, three inches in diameter — most valuable of all fruits — wood useful — bark contains yellow dye — fruit used for dessert, baking, preserving, drying, making jelly, cider, vinegar, malic acid for medicinal purposes.

## Lesson 257.

### THE METAPHOR.

The metaphor, or implied comparison, while the most striking and most pleasing of rhetorical figures, is at the same time the most common.

A day when the sun shines may be called a sunny day, but we may also say a sunny face.

The word *sweet* describes sugar and honey, but we all know what is meant by a sweet child.

The words *sunny* and *sweet*, as they are first used in the sentences above, have their literal sense; in the second use, they have their figurative sense.

A word is used in a literal sense when it has its simplest and most natural meaning. A word has a figurative sense

when it is used to carry its idea to an object to which it does not naturally belong.

We use metaphors in every-day speech. If a teacher says, "John, you may go to the head of the class," he uses a metaphor. He means that John may go to that place in the class which is the same to the rest of the class as the head is to the rest of the body.

A metaphor is said to be explained when its meaning is made clear, and the way is pointed out in which its figurative sense is derived from its literal sense. The metaphor in the sentence, "John, you may go to the head of the class," has just been explained.

Explain the following metaphors: —

John is at the foot of the class. I have found the root of the trouble. This is the ground of my complaint. Laura, you are a jewel. The metaphor is the gem of figures. You see the fruit of your patient efforts. There is no cloak for your sins. He is the spring of all our joys.

## Lesson 258.

### PREAMBLE AND RESOLUTIONS.

You are a member of a club whose treasurer has just resigned his office on account of his removal to another city. You desire to show him that you recognize the value of his services to the club and regret his departure. At a meeting of the club, it will be proper for you to introduce the following preamble and resolutions: —

Whereas, Our worthy and respected Treasurer, William F. Carrigan, has resigned his office in this club and is about to

remove to Boston to enter the service of the Old Colony Railroad, and whereas, his services to this club have been of special value to its interests; therefore, be it

Resolved, That we place on record our appreciation of the faithfulness, ability, and courtesy with which he has discharged his duties as treasurer of this club, and of that pleasant intercourse which has endeared him to his fellow-members.

Resolved, That we tender to Mr. Carrigan our best wishes for his future success in the important position to which he has been called.

Resolved, That an engrossed copy of these resolutions be presented to Mr. Carrigan.

Copy these resolutions in the following form as they will appear when presented to Mr. Carrigan: —

[Heading.]

Mr. Wm. F. Carrigan.

Dear Friend:

At a meeting of ....., held ....., the following resolutions were unanimously adopted:

Whereas, Our .....

.....

....., *President.*

....., *Secretary.*

## Lesson 259.

### CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

**Words used in pairs as connectives are called correlatives.**

The following are the principal correlatives: —

| | |
|---|---|
| As — as: | He is as tall as you are. |
| So — as: | He is not so tall as you are. |
| Both — and: | He is both talented and ambitious. |
| Either — or: | Either speak more distinctly or keep still. |
| If — then: | If you wish it, then I will go. |
| Neither — nor: | Neither protestations nor entreaties availed. |
| So — that: | It is so dark that I can scarcely see. |
| Such — as: | I have selected such things as I think I need. |
| Though — yet: | Though the boy is poor, yet he is ambitious. |
| Whether — or: | I know not whether to praise or to blame you. |
| Better — than: | He is better than you suppose. |

Any adjective in the comparative degree may be used as a correlative of *than*.

The first correlative in each set or pair is either a conjunction, an adjective, or an adverb. If it is a conjunction, it joins with the second correlative in making the connection.

If the first correlative is an adjective or an adverb, it performs its own office as an adjective or an adverb, and by anticipation adds emphasis to the correlative which follows.

For example, in the sentence, "He is as tall as you are," the first *as* is an adverb modifying *tall;* the second *as* connects the clause *you are* to *as*, which it modifies.

The second correlative in each pair is a conjunction. [Except *as* after *such* or *same*. See page 198.]

Co-ordinate and correlative conjunctions join the same cases of nouns and pronouns, the same modes and tenses of verbs, and the same forms of elements; *i.e.* words to words, phrases to phrases, and clauses to clauses.

Use each of the given pairs of correlatives in an original sentence, and tell the construction of each correlative.

## Lesson 260.

### CAUTIONS.

The correlative of *either* should be *or*.

The correlative of *neither* should be *nor*.

Insert *or* or *nor* in these blanks: —

Neither Mary —— Julia has answered correctly.

I shall either stay here —— go to the country.

The poor boy had neither shoes —— stockings.

He knew neither me —— my father.

The sky looks as though it would either snow —— rain.

Do not use *such* for *so*.

*Such* is an adjective, meaning *of that kind;* while *so* is an adverb of degree. In the sentence, "I never saw such a flower before," the meaning is, "I never before saw a flower of that kind." In the sentence, "I never knew so eloquent a man," the adverb *so* is used to express the degree of eloquence.

Be careful in the use of *like* and *as*.

If the second part of a comparison is expressed by a noun or a pronoun, it may have *like* before it; but if it is expressed by a clause, it should have *as* before it; thus, —

Act like a gentleman. Act as a gentleman should act.

Be careful in the use of the correlatives *so — as* and *as — as*. When a negative is expressed or implied, use *so — as;* thus, —

If I'm not so large as you, you are not so small as I, and not half so spry.

Write five sentences containing *like*, five containing *as*, five containing *as — as*, and five containing *so — as*.

## Lesson 261.

### FIGURATIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES. — FADED METAPHORS.

Tell in which of the following expressions the adjective has a literal and in which a figurative use: —

A hard rock. A hard lesson. A hard winter.
A bitter pill. A bitter disappointment. A bitter experience.
A tender plant. A tender heart. A tender expression.
A heavy responsibility. A heavy weight. A heavy style.
A dull boy. A dull knife. A dull day.
A smooth story. A smooth rogue. A smooth piece of ice.
A burning shame. A burning coal. A burning blush.

Metaphors so common that we do not regard them as unusual expressions are sometimes called "faded metaphors." Some of the examples below are of faded metaphors.

We talk of *right* conduct, of *fair* dealing, of a town's being *stormed*, of a *flow* of words, of the *light* of nature, of *plucking* from the memory a *rooted* sorrow, of a *torrent* of passion, of *speaking* eyes, of the *standing* of a pupil in his class, and all these are metaphors. Explain them.

Find ten metaphors in your reading lesson.

## Lesson 262.

### CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

Correlative conjunctions should be placed before the same parts of speech.

It is a common error to place one conjunction before a

verb and the other before another part of speech. Do not say, "This exercise not only must be written correctly, but also neatly." The sentence should be, "This exercise must be written not only correctly, but also neatly."

Explain the error in each of these sentences. Write the sentences correctly.

The prisoner will receive either ten days' imprisonment or be fined several dollars.

Let us not only consider the lesson, but also the application.

The street neither is paved nor lighted.

Not only should you have given advice, but also assistance.

Some men are not only deemed great because of their own ability, but also because of the circumstances in which they are placed.

God never designed that any condition in life should either be altogether fortunate, or completely wretched.

The poor child neither had a home of her own nor friends to whom she could go.

The man is not only skilful himself in the use of all sorts of tools, but he also understands how to oversee other workmen.

He is both distinguished as a teacher and a scholar.

Our pleasures rather seem to spring from things too low than too high.

We should both consider the advantages and the disadvantages of this plan.

Although much is done for the poor of New York, the suffering among them is yet great.

The house is both well located and has also all the modern improvements.

Although there has been little cold weather this winter, a large amount of ice has still been gathered.

## Lesson 263.

### DESCRIPTION.

Study carefully the fine description in this lesson of a farm-yard during a storm, written by Washington Irving. After you have done this, compare it with the description which you wrote on the same subject, as directed on page 156.

Write a letter to your teacher in which you explain the difference between the two descriptions.

#### A Farm-yard during a Storm.

The place was littered with wet straw that had been kicked about by travellers and stable-boys. In one corner was a stagnant pool of water. There were several half-drowned fowls crowded together under a cart, among which was a miserable, crest-fallen rooster, drenched out of all life and spirit, his drooping feathers matted, as it were, into a single plume, along which the water trickled from his back.

Near the cart was a half-dozing cow, chewing the cud, and standing patiently to be rained on, with wreaths of vapor rising from her reeking hide. A wall-eyed horse, tired of the loneliness of his stable, was poking his spectral head out of a window, with the rain dripping on it from the eaves. An unhappy cur, chained to a dog-house hard by, uttered something every now and then, between a bark and a yelp.

An uncomely servant-girl tramped backward and forward through the yard on pattens, looking as sulky as the weather itself. Everything, in short, was comfortless and forlorn, excepting a crew of hardened ducks, assembled, like boon companions, round a puddle, and making a riotous noise over their liquor.

## Lesson 264.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

#### The Blacksmith's Shop.

I could paint the blacksmith's dingy shop,
Its sign, a pillar of smoke;
The farm-horse halt, the rough-haired colt,
And the jade with her neck in a yoke;
The pony that made to himself a law,
And wouldn't go under the saddle, nor draw!

The poor old mare at the door-post,
With joints as stiff as its pegs, —
Her one white eye, and her neck awry, —
And the thriftless farmer that used to stand
And curry her ribs with a kindly hand.

Alice Cary.

Describe a blacksmith's dingy shop and the blacksmith at work. Some of the horses that are brought him to be shod are partially described in the stanzas of this lesson. Describe them more fully.

## Lesson 265.

### RESOLUTIONS.

The use of a preamble to state the occasion for the resolutions that follow, or the reason for them, makes the resolutions more formal, but is not always essential.

You are a member of The Daily Doings Club. Write

two resolutions in reference to the management of the club and the use of the periodicals for the coming year.

As secretary send these resolutions to the chairman of the library committee, stating by whom they were introduced, that they have been referred, etc.

## Lesson 266.

### SIMILES AND METAPHORS.

Explain the similes and the metaphors in the following: —

Ill habits gather by unseen degrees,
As brooks make rivers, rivers run to seas.

Habit is a cable; we weave a thread of it each day, and at last we cannot break it.

The twilight hours, like birds, flew by
As lightly and as free;
Ten thousand stars were in the sky,
Ten thousand in the sea.

Electricity is the soul of the earth.

But yonder comes the powerful king of day
Rejoicing in the east.

Make golden stairways of your weaknesses.

Kindness is the music of good-will to men.

On the motionless branches of some trees, autumn berries hang, like clusters of coral beads.

Hope is like the sun, which, as we journey towards it, casts the shadow of our burden behind us.

Human experience, like the stern lights of a ship at sea, illumine only the paths which we have passed over.

## Lesson 267.

### SIMPLE, COMPLEX, AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Every sentence has a subject and a predicate, or is made up of clauses which have subjects and predicates.

**A simple sentence is one containing no clauses.**

**A compound sentence is one composed of two or more clauses of equal importance, no one of which is subordinate to another; as, —**

How few are our real wants, and how vast our imaginary ones!

**A complex sentence is one containing a principal clause with one or more subordinate clauses; as, —**

Nobody talks much that doesn't say unwise things.

The clauses of a compound sentence may be simple or complex.

What kind of sentence is each of these sentences?

Each day is the scholar of yesterday.

Praise, like gold and diamonds, owes its value only to its scarcity.

Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thoughts.

Sow an act, and you reap a habit; sow a habit, and you reap a character; sow a character, and you reap a destiny.

What good came of it all at last?

Goodness is the only investment that never fails.

Every fact that is learned becomes a key to other facts.

Some faces are, in their brightness, a prophecy; and some, in their sadness, a history.

Genius begins great works, but labor alone finishes them.

## Lesson 268.

### ESSAYS.

#### Coal.

Outline: —

1. Where found.
2. Composition . . { How proved, / How transformed.
3. Properties . . . { Black, / Hard, / Heat-giving.
4. Kinds . . . . . { Anthracite, for heating, / Bituminous, for gas.
5. Uses . . . . . { For warming, / For lighting, / For cooking, / For manufacturing.

#### Essay.

Coal is found in great abundance in the United States and in most of the countries of Europe, especially in England, Belgium, and France.

It is a mineral that has been formed from the vegetation which grew upon the earth thousands of years ago; in many kinds of coal the leaves of ferns and other plants are frequently found, and sometimes, too, the trunks of large trees. As the plants and trees fell and decayed, they became imbedded in the soil, and were covered with earth which hardened to stone. There they lay for ages after ages, until, by heat and pressure, they became transformed into coal.

Coal is a black and hard mineral. Its most important quality is the readiness with which it burns, and its power of giving out heat while burning.

The chief kinds of coal are the hard anthracite and the soft bituminous; the former is used for ordinary heating purposes; the latter for the gas which it gives off when heated, which is conveyed to our houses to give us light.

The benefits which we obtain from coal can scarcely be told. It warms and lights our dwellings, and cooks our food. By its help we obtain steam, which works all our machinery, and drives our locomotives.

There are many manufacturing towns in our country which owe their importance, and in many cases their existence, to this mineral.

Show how the essay corresponds with its outline.

## Lesson 269.

### SYNONYMS.

State the distinction in meaning between: —

character *and* reputation
haste *and* hurry
idle *and* indolent
pride *and* vanity
verse *and* stanza

## Lesson 270.

### RESOLUTIONS.

The Natural History Society of your school has had an excursion, and has received favors and courtesies from several persons, and also from a society whose hospitality it enjoyed. Write a series of resolutions in acknowledgment.

As secretary write to one of the persons to whom a resolution of thanks has been voted and send him a copy of the resolution.

The Natural History Society of your school has voted to ask the principal and the assistants in the first room to accompany the Society as its guests upon its next excursion. Inform them of the action of the Society.

## Lesson 271.

### CONTRAST.

By contrast we perceive things more clearly, as when a white surface is put beside a black, a red beside a blue. It is, therefore, a most useful aid to composition.

Here are some examples of words showing contrast in meaning: —

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wealth | poverty | labor | rest | work | play |
| mirth | sadness | barren | fertile | hot | cold |
| acute | dull | polite | rude | cautious | rash |

Write ten pairs of contrasted words.

Point out the contrasts in the following sentences: —

Sink or swim, live or die, I give my hand and my heart to this vote.

He hath cooled my friends and heated mine enemies.

We see more of the world by travel, more of human nature by remaining at home.

If his jests are coarse, his arguments are strong.

Goldsmith has the art of being minute without tediousness,

and general without confusion; his language is copious without exuberance, exact without restraint, and easy without weakness.

He was too judicious to commit faults, but not sufficiently vigorous to attain excellence.

This land considered as a pasture, from an animal's point of view, must be disappointing, but to a trained eye, when considered as a landscape, it has a charm and fascination.

Wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat, because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

In others we admire self respect, but despise self esteem.

Find in your Reader five good examples of contrast.

## Lesson 272.

### ANALYSIS. — COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. I will go, and he may remain. 2. He must walk, but we shall ride. 3. I should have called John, but he came of his own accord. 4. I will see his parents, or you may speak to them about their son's advancement. 5. He will not go, nor will he send his brother. 6. All dread death, yet few prepare for it. 7. Reason frequently errs, whereas instinct seldom makes a mistake. 8. He has failed, yet he strives manfully on against all obstacles. 9. He would not explain, nor would he make any restitution. 10. He went a private and returned a captain.

In written analysis of compound sentences the separate clauses, if desired, may be enclosed in oblique brackets; thus, —

⟨I will go⟩, + and ⟨he may remain.⟩

The marking of each clause is all that really is required, however; as the eye readily perceives the subjects and predicates which indicate the clauses; thus, —

He must walk, + but we shall ride.

## Lesson 273.

### PUNCTUATION. — THE SEMICOLON.

*When* as, viz., e.g., i.e., to wit, thus, namely, *or* that is, *introduces an example, a semicolon should be placed before and a comma after it.*

*When the clauses of a compound sentence contain commas, they should be separated by the semicolon; as, —*

New York was the seat of the government; and as Washington travelled thither from his home in Virginia, he had enthusiastic greetings everywhere.

NOTE. — If the clauses of a compound sentence are short and closely connected, they may be separated by a comma even though they contain commas.

Complete the punctuation of the following sentences: —

Toward the source or beginning of a river is up stream and toward the opposite end or mouth is down stream.

The temperate countries of the world form two temperate zones the northern extends from the Tropic of Cancer to the Arctic Circle the southern from the Tropic of Capricorn to the Antarctic Circle.

The town pump once made a speech and this is what it said: Cold water boys is the best drink it purifies everything preserves everything and refreshes everything drink it and you will be healthier and happier than if you drank any other drink.

When a writer reasons we look only for clearness when he describes we expect embellishment when he decides or relates we desire plainness and simplicity.

The point on the horizon at which the sun rises is called the East, at which it sets the West.

Eunice has five cents Cora has seven cents which has the more money Eunice or Cora?

## Lesson 274.

### ESSAY.—ICE.

Write an essay about ice, by answering the following questions:—

1. What is ice? 2. What different forms does it take? 3. What is an icicle? 4. What is hail? 5. What is sleet? 6. What is a glacier? 7. What is an iceberg? 8. Of what use is ice? 9. Where do we get it? 10. How is it gathered? 11. Is there any country where there is no ice? 12. When water freezes, does it expand or contract? 13. What causes water-pipes to burst in very cold weather? 14. Describe a winter scene where boys and girls are having great sport upon the ice.

## Lesson 275.

### A COMPARISON OF STYLE.

Compare the two following passages. Observe that the use of contrast has made the second clearer and more forcible than the first. Point out the contrasts in the second.

Lincoln and Garfield suffered the same fate, though Lincoln died at the close of a heavy war, while the nation was at peace at the time of Garfield's death.

Garfield's terrible fate came upon him instantly, striking him down in the prime of life. Helpless, bleeding, and wounded, he awaited many long weeks of torture, and, at last, the silence of the grave.

Lincoln fell at the close of a mighty struggle, in which the passions of men had been deeply stirred. Garfield was slain in a day of peace, when brother had been reconciled to brother, and when anger and hate had been banished from the land.

His terrible fate was upon him in an instant. One moment he stood erect, strong, confident in the years stretching out peacefully before him. The next he lay wounded, bleeding, helpless, doomed to weary weeks of torture, to silence, and the grave. JAMES G. BLAINE.

## Lesson 276.

### THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

1. A rich man is envied.
2. A man who is rich is envied.

Is the first sentence simple, complex, or compound?

What is the second? What adjective element is there in the first sentence? What does it modify? What adjective element is there in the second sentence? What does it modify? What kind of clause is *who is rich?*

**A clause used as an adjective is called an adjective clause.**

Point out the adjective clauses in these sentences, and tell what noun each clause modifies: —

Those berries that you have gathered are poisonous. [*Those berries* are poisonous is the principal clause, *that you have gathered* is the subordinate clause. *That you have gathered* is an adjective clause, and modifies *berries.*]

A man that gives to the poor is called charitable.

The lesson that I have given you will require study.

He that has much spirit makes most of his life.

They are not the best students that are most dependent on books.

The happiest man is he that has no thought for himself.

The man that has only himself to please finds himself a hard master.

The connectives in the sentences are all relative pronouns. Point them out. What do they connect? What are their antecedents? Of what gender, person, and number is each relative? [Look at the antecedent to determine this.] Of what case is each relative? [Look at the subordinate clause to learn this.]

An adjective clause may be connected to the noun which it modifies by a conjunctive adverb.

Name the adjective clause, the conjunctive adverb, and the modified noun in the sentences below: —

The reason why I came is understood.

The time when we are to start has not been fixed.

The land wherein they dwell is fruitful.
He knows the subject whereof he speaks.
The place whereon thou standest is holy ground.
He found the place where it was written.

Sometimes the connective is omitted. Supply the connectives in the sentences which follow. Tell the adjective clause and the noun modified.

'Tis education forms the common mind. [which]
I'm monarch of all I survey.
The book you mention must be interesting.
We must make the best bargain we can.
The friends he loved have departed.
The first thing a man has to do in this world is to turn his possibilities into powers.
The maps you have drawn are very well done.

## Lesson 277.

### PUNCTUATION.—THE ADJECTIVE PHRASE AND CLAUSE.

A phrase or clause is restrictive when it limits the use of the noun or pronoun with which it is connected, and cannot be omitted without destroying the sense; as, —

No Vice-President who had become President has died during his term of office.
The tomb of Washington is at Mt. Vernon.

A phrase or clause is explanatory when it gives some additional thought or adds a description; as, —

The Governor, who is the chief executive officer of a state, has the title of "His Excellency."

Having approved the plan the king put it into execution.

An adjective phrase beginning with a preposition is restrictive. An explanatory adjective phrase is really parenthetical.

*An adjective phrase or clause, unless restrictive, should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.*

Complete the punctuation of the following sentences: —

Awkward in his person James was ill-calculated to command respect.

Edward apprehensive of danger to the province put it in a position of defence.

From the summit of Vesuvius darkly visible in the distance shot a pale meteoric livid light.

Our Western prairies stretching as far as the eye can reach and covered with tall grass moving with a wave-like motion in the wind have often been compared to seas.

The United States of America is the largest and most successful republic in the world educating its citizens so that they may be able to make good laws and choose good rulers.

Shakespeare who lived in the reign of Queen Elizabeth was the greatest of all the English poets.

The messengers who brought the news of our army's defeat were immediately seized and imprisoned.

Happy is the man that findeth wisdom and the man that getteth understanding length of days is in her right hand and in her left hand riches and honor her ways are ways of pleasantness and all her paths are peace.

The stars which twinkle are all distant suns shining like our sun with their own light those which do not twinkle are worlds like our earth and are rolling with it about our sun at various distances they are called planets the sun with its planets including the earth is called the solar system.

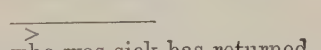
## Lesson 278.

### ANALYSIS — ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. The man who was sick has returned. 2. The soldier, whose arm was amputated, has not returned to the army. 3. The lady whom we just met is my cousin's wife. 4. Those four books which were lying in the desk were dictionaries. 5. The birds which we now hear are called gold-finches. 6. Did you see the carriage and harness that were exhibited at the fair? 7. Who that respects himself would do such things? 8. I will take such things as are brought. 9. I will take such things as you bring. 10. The grave where he is buried is in yonder churchyard. 11. We knew the very minute when he left the city. 12. We were present on the day when the assembly met. 13. I will see whoever comes. 14. I will do whatever he orders.

A subordinate connective is indicated by the sign of inequality, > or <, placed above it, with the opening turned toward the principal element; thus, —




## Lesson 279.

### FIGURATIVE AND COMMONPLACE STATEMENTS.

*The beauty of figurative language must not be spoiled by the addition of a commonplace statement.*

The thirsty earth absorbed the gentle shower, the flowers raised their drooping heads, and all nature seemed to rejoice in this timely bounty of heaven, but the streets were muddy.

The commonplace clause at the end of this sentence is in strange and unpleasant contrast with the figurative language that precedes.

Show that the sentences below are faulty in the same respect.

The stained-glass window admits a light upon the pulpit as soft and mellow as moonlight, and it cost $300.

How sweetly the moonlight sleeps upon this bank, and how dry the grass looks.

He was a Napoleon in battle, and he was thirty years old.

Concerts and lectures, like poetry and periodicals, tend to relieve the mind and instruct it, and Mr. Shaw will deliver his illustrated lecture next Wednesday evening.

Calamities came upon him like the inundations of the Nile; but they only strengthened his fixed determination to do right whatever might happen, and he now began to learn stenography.

## Lesson 280.

### PUNCTUATION.—ENUMERATION OF PARTICULARS.

When parts are named and placed in apposition with a word denoting the whole, we have an enumeration of particulars.

*In an enumeration of particulars, if the parts are separated from each other by commas, they should be separated from the general term by a semicolon; but if the parts are separated by a semicolon, they should be separated from the general term by a colon.*

Study the punctuation of these three sentences. Example 1 is not in the form of an enumeration of particulars, and the punctuation is that of the series.

1. The New England States are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

2. There are six New England states; Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

3. New England has six states: Maine, which is noted for its ship-building, its trade in lumber and ice, and its fine harbors; New Hampshire, remarkable for its fine scenery; Vermont, chiefly a grazing country, but noted also for its quarries of marbles, soapstone, and slate; Massachusetts, the third state in the Union in the value of its manufactures; Rhode Island, the smallest state in the Union, but noted for its manufactures of cotton, wool, iron, and jewelry; and Connecticut, which is noted for a greater variety of manufactures than any other state.

Punctuate these sentences: —

North America has three principal mountain ranges the Rocky Mountains the California Mountains and the Appalachian Mountains.

The earth has two motions a daily rotation upon its axis and a yearly revolution around the sun.

There are four seasons in temperate climates spring summer autumn and winter.

Mankind has been divided into five different races the White or Caucasian Race named from the Caucasus Mountains the Yellow or Mongolian Race which includes the Chinese and Japanese the Red or American Race which includes the American Indians the Black or Ethiopian Race which inhabits the interior of Africa and the Brown or Malayan Race which includes all the barbarous inhabitants of the world besides.

## Lesson 281.

### MIXED METAPHORS.

She came steaming into the room, full sail, like a whirlwind.

Here the movement is compared to a steamboat, a sailing-vessel, and a whirlwind, all in the same sentence.

Metaphors are said to be *mixed* when differing metaphors are combined in the same sentence. A sentence which contains mixed metaphors is neither clear nor forcible, and should be carefully avoided.

Wherein are the following figures faulty? Improve them.

To take arms against a sea of troubles.

Her cheerful disposition, the jewel of her character, was the chain which bound the family together.

These are the first fruits of my long study, at last unearthed and brought to light.

Wild fancies gambolled unbridled through his brain, and swept away all his firm resolves.

Idleness is the rust of the soul and the moth of destruction.

The love of money, the root of all evil, lays a snare for the feet of man.

## Lesson 282.

### BOOK REVIEW.

1. Tell who wrote the book. When. Where. Why.
2. Give an outline of its plan.
3. What are some of its finest passages?
4. What impression do you retain from its reading?
5. What advice do you give others as to reading it?

## Lesson 283.

### NOTICES.

It is the duty of the secretary of a society or of a committee to issue, or post, or serve the notices of its meetings.

As secretary, write a notice of a special meeting of The Daily Doings Club.

By the direction of the chairman of the committee on fines and assessments write a notice to the members of the committee to attend a meeting. Imitate the following form: —

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC SCHOOLS.

OFFICE OF SECRETARY.
DES MOINES, IOWA, *Oct.* 28, 1891.

DEAR SIR:

You are respectfully requested to attend a meeting of the Finance Committee at the office of the Superintendent, on Friday, Oct. 30, 1891, at 12 o'clock M.

By order of the Chairman,
EUGENE R. FIELD,
*Secretary of School Committee.*

WM. R. JONES.

## Lesson 284.

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

THE WASP AND THE BEE.

A wasp met a bee that was just buzzing by,
And he said, "Little cousin, can you tell me why
You are loved so much better by people than I?

"My back shines as bright and as yellow as gold,
And my shape is most elegant, too, to behold!
And yet, for all that, no one likes me, I'm told."

"Ah, cousin," the bee said, "'tis all very true;
But were I even half as much mischief to do,
Then, I'm sure, they would love me no better than you.

"You have a fine shape and a delicate wing,
And they say you are handsome, but then there's one thing
They can never put up with, and that is your sting.

"My coat is quite homely and plain, as you see,
Yet nobody ever is angry with me,
Because I'm a harmless and diligent bee."

What is the lesson to be drawn from this story? What proverb could you use as its title?

Write a somewhat similar conversation between a hawk and a hen.

## Lesson 285.

### PERIODIC, LOOSE, AND BALANCED SENTENCES.

**Sentences having one or more places at which a period could be placed and the remainder of the sentence omitted are called loose sentences.**

**Sentences in which the sense could not be taken as complete until the end of the sentence is reached are called periodic sentences.**

All sentences are either periodic or loose. The language of conversation is largely composed of loose sentences.

**Sentences whose clauses are constructed on the same plan are called balanced sentences; as, —**

The periodic sentence is the more forcible and formal; the loose, the more clear and natural.

Below are six sentences, three of which are loose, three periodic. Which are periodic and which loose? Change the periodic sentences into loose sentences, and the loose sentences into periodic.

1. The Sphinx is a figure of a monster having the head of a woman and the body of a winged lion.

2. Hans Andersen, a Danish author of this century, has written some very fine stories for children.

3. Napoleon was born in 1769 on the island of Corsica, and he died in 1821, a prisoner on the island of St. Helena.

4. The governing of the Indians, the taking of the census, the selling of lands to immigrants, and the giving of patents for inventions, are duties of the officers of the Interior Department.

5. The Thiergarten is a large park of Berlin, situated along the banks of the Spree, two miles long by a mile in width, with many fine trees, well-kept drives, and beautiful lakes.

6. No picture is better known than Leonardo da Vinci's "Last Supper," millions of copies of which have been circulated in engravings, oil paintings, and photographs.

Find in your Reader five periodic sentences, five loose sentences, and five balanced sentences.

## Lesson 286.

### PUNCTUATION. — ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS.

*Adverbial phrases or clauses, unless short and closely connected to the word which they modify, should be set off from the rest of the sentence by the comma; as, —*

In old times, kings claimed to rule by Divine right.

At Sheffield, knives, forks, scissors, and cutlery of all kinds are made.

Complete the punctuation of the following sentences: —

In countries on the seacoast men engage in fishing where there are fine forests in lumbering and where there are beds of stone or ores in quarrying and mining.

On a frosty morning you may see the panes of glass covered with landscapes mountains lakes and trees blended in a beautiful fairy picture.

By the climate of a country we mean its degree of heat or cold moisture or dryness healthfulness or unhealthfulness.

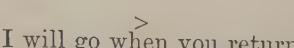
On leaving the torrid zone tropical plants gradually disappear instead of the palm and banana trees we find the beech oak maple and pine.

## Lesson 287.

### ANALYSIS. — ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. I will go when you return. 2. He has just gone where the climate is more agreeable to him. 3. I heard groans as I approached the house. 4. When you hear his footsteps, open the door. 5. Will he come if the rain ceases? 6. He will come unless the train is delayed. 7. The tired soldiers stopped wherever night overtook them. 8. We must hasten, as the darkness is increasing very rapidly. 9. The birds flew off as soon as we came in sight. 10. I will go, provided you remain. 11. He hurried because the storm increased. 12. We gave up the chase, for the sun was fast sinking behind the western hills.



## Lesson 288.

### USE OF THE PRESENT TENSE.

In making a statement of a present fact, or of anything that is true at all times, the present tense should be used.

For example, in the sentence: "We were told to learn what was the capital of each state in the Union," we refer to the present capitals of the states, and the sentence should be: "We were told to learn what is the capital of each state in the Union."

Explain why each of the following sentences is incorrect. Write it correctly.

We learned in our lesson yesterday that water was composed of hydrogen and oxygen.

I did not understand what your name was.

No one in the class could tell how Popocatapetl was spelled.

The building we have just passed was the High School.

The lecturer began with the axiom that a straight line was the shortest line between two points.

Did you discover in your work that practice made perfect?

Every child has been disappointed when informed that "Robinson Crusoe" was not a true story.

Were you never told that the sun and the moon could not both shine at the same time?

## Lesson 289.

### SYNONYMS.

State the distinction in meaning between: —

| | |
|---|---|
| delightful *and* delicious | hope *and* expect |
| common *and* mutual | qualified *and* competent |

Use each of the foregoing words in a sentence.

## Lesson 290.

### COPY OF RECORD.

A portion of the minutes of a secretary will often be desired for a particular use, and he will be called upon for the part of his records concerning some special action.

This item from the minutes may be given in the following form: —

PROVIDENCE, R.I.,
IN SCHOOL COMMITTEE,
*Nov.* 28, 1890.

Voted, That "The Leading Facts of American History," by D. H. Montgomery, be used in the successive classes beginning the study of United States history from this date.

Attest:

HENRY B. ROSE, *Secretary.*

Another form might be: —

At a Regular[1] Meeting of the Literary and Social Club, held Jan. 8, 1889, on motion of William Hendry,[2] it was

Resolved,[3] That ——

Attest:

REGINALD AVERY, *Sec'y.*

[1] Regular, special. [2] Seconded by Owen Merideth.
[3] Resolved, ordered, voted.

Give a copy of minutes certifying that a contract for building a school-house has been awarded to ——.

Give a copy of minutes showing that a prize for excellence in reading was awarded to —— by the judges selected to make the award.

## Lesson 291.

### DESCRIPTION.

If you should make a journey to Africa, what would you expect to see there? Describe some of the scenes.

Describe some picture which you have seen.

## Lesson 292.

### PUNCTUATION.

Observe the use of the colon and semicolon in this exercise. Write the exercise from dictation.

We have two sets of teeth: —

1. Temporary. 2. Permanent.

Many grammarians divide grammar into four parts: —

1. Orthography. 2. Etymology.
3. Syntax. 4. Prosody.

We ought to study diligently for the following reasons: 1. By doing so we strengthen our powers; 2. We gain knowledge that will be of great service; 3. We please our friends; 4. We gain the approval of our own conscience.

## Lesson 293.

### CLIMAX.

*In loose sentences the several items of the general thought may be so arranged as to increase in importance to the end.*

*Such an arrangement of a sentence or paragraph is called a climax.*

Rearrange the following loose sentences so that the several parts shall stand in order of importance. Needful changes in phraseology may be made.

For want of a horse the rider was lost, for want of a shoe the horse was lost, for want of a nail the shoe was lost.

Drops make the clouds, the rain supplies the rivers, the clouds send forth the rain, and the rivers make the great ocean.

A Scotch mist becomes a shower, and a shower, a flood; and a storm, a tempest; and thunder and lightning, heaven-quake and earthquake; and a tempest, thunder and lightning.

Crimes lead to the gallows, but vices lead to crimes, and indolence leads to vices.

Angels would be gods, and men would be angels.

She is soft, flexible, pitiful, mild; thou, remorseless, rough, stern, obdurate, flinty.

But when shall we be stronger? Will it be when we are totally disarmed? Will it be the next year, or the next week? Will it be when a British guard is stationed in every house?

The greatness of a people is constituted by the love of law, the love of knowledge, the regard for our neighbor's rights and feelings, the desire to do justice, the respect for man as man.

The great globe itself, yea, all which it inherit, the cloud-capped towers, the solemn temples, the gorgeous palaces, shall dissolve.

Ambition creates seditions, wars, discords, hatred, and shyness.

A virtuous and pious life will prove the best preparation for immortality and death.

## Lesson 294.

### NOUN CLAUSES.

A clause, like a noun, may be the subject or the complement of a verb, the object of a preposition, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

"I will try" has wrought wonders. [Noun clause used as subject.]

Shakespeare says, "All the world's a stage." [Noun clause used as object.]

The fear was that the bridge would give way. [Noun clause used as predicate nominative.]

The fact that the earth is round is well known. [Noun clause used in apposition with a noun.]

It is strange that you are so often late. [Noun clause used in apposition with a pronoun.]

Much depends upon how he makes his criticisms. [Noun clause used as the object of a preposition.]

A noun clause used as subject is usually introduced by *that* or *whether*, which in such use may be called introductory conjunctions. A verb having a clause as subject is in the third person, singular number.

Which clauses in the following sentences are noun clauses? Give the relation of each noun clause to the rest of the sentence. Parse the connective or the introductory word: —

That you do not understand this is surprising.

It is known that the planets are wandering stars, and that they receive their light from the sun.

You forget that she is our cousin.

"Honesty is the best policy" is a common maxim.

That a clause may be used as a subject sometimes puzzles pupils.

It is doubtful if he will return.

This is my commandment, that ye love one another.

No one can tell how the prisoner made his escape.

Whoever did that is a rascal.

The certainty that war must come is growing more manifest.

Her favorite maxim was, "Wilful waste makes woful want."

Change "Where there's a will there's a way" to "Where there is a will you can find a way."

My opinion is that poor memory is caused by poor attention.

The belief that electricity is the coming motor is now almost universal.

## Lesson 295.

### PUNCTUATION. — NOUN CLAUSES.

*If a noun clause used as the subject of a sentence is quite long, contains commas, or ends with a verb, it should be followed by a comma; as,* —

Those Presbyterian members of the House of Commons who had many years before been expelled by the army, returned to their seats.

A new feeling of what is due to the ignorant, the poor, and the depraved, has sprung up in society.

Whatever is, is right.

*A noun clause used in apposition should be set off by commas; as,* —

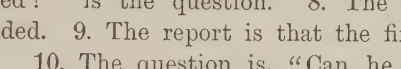
The provision of the Constitution, that new states may be admitted into the Union, has resulted in the addition of thirty-one states to the original thirteen.

## Lesson 296.

### ANALYSIS. — NOMINATIVE CLAUSES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. That he was suffering from hunger was well known. 2. How a seed becomes a plant is a great mystery. 3. Where the pirates have concealed their ill-gotten booty will soon be discovered. 4. When the trial will occur is very uncertain, on account of the judge's illness. 5. That we must do it is certain. 6. That it was his work is easily seen. 7. "Can he succeed?" is the question. 8. The rumor is that he is wounded. 9. The report is that the fire is now raging fearfully. 10. The question is, "Can he succeed?" 11. The reason may be, he does not try. 12. The query is, "Where can we find it?"




## Lesson 297.

### TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

When an infinitive is joined to a verb which it modifies, the tense of the infinitive does not denote time actually present, past, or future, but the present infinitive denotes time present or future, and the perfect infinitive denotes time past, relative to the time of the verb with which each is used. The same rule applies to the participle. These sentences are correct: —

He was said to be very old.
He was said to have been born in 1815.

Correct the following sentences: —

It was part of my duty to have dusted the room.

The general expected to have reached the river before night overtook him.

The fireman was thought to be dead from suffocation before the fire reached him.

He intended to have started on his journey to-morrow.

We happened to meet him once before this.

Did you not expect to have spent Christmas Day at home?

This meeting ought to have taken place to-morrow instead of to-day.

It would have given me still greater pleasure to receive his approbation at an earlier period; but to have received it at all is a gratification to me.

The car has gone, though she thought it would have waited.

I thought you could have done it.

I intended to have gone yesterday, but the rain prevented.

## Lesson 298.

### TREASURER'S REPORT.

A treasurer, for his own safety and that of the society for which he acts, should make frequent and detailed reports. This report should be examined and approved by an auditor or an auditing committee appointed for this purpose, before it is presented to the society.

Using the following form as a guide, make out a treasurer's report for some society or club. Notice the certificate of the auditing committee.

## Treasurer's Report.

The undersigned, Treasurer of The Daily Doings Club, begs leave to submit the following report for the quarter ending Nov. 1, 1891: —

The balance on hand at the commencement of the quarter was seven dollars and fifty cents. There have been received from all sources during the quarter fifteen dollars and thirty cents: during the same time the expenses amounted to twelve dollars and seventy cents, leaving a balance on hand of ten dollars and ten cents.

The annexed statement will show in detail the receipts and expenditures.

All of which is respectfully submitted.

Jerome Adams,
*Treasurer Daily Doings Club.*

Jerome Allen, Treasurer, in acc't with Daily Doings Club.

| 1891. | *Dr.* | | 1891. | *Cr.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sept. 1. | To cash on hand at end of previous quarter | $7.50 | Oct. 20. | By subscription for Public Opinion | $2.50 |
| Oct. 1. | To membership[15] fees, | 3.75 | | The Week's Current | 1.50 |
| Oct. 15. | To sale of papers | 4.85 | | Detroit Free Press | 4.35 |
| " " | To proceeds of entertainment | 6.70 | | Detroit Tribune | 4.35 |
| | | | | By balance | 10.10 |
| | | $22.80 | | | $22.80 |

East Saginaw, Mich.,
*Nov.* 1, 1891.

We hereby certify that we have examined the accounts and vouchers of the Treasurer and find them correct; and that the balance in his hands is ten dollars and ten cents [$10.10].

Phebe Randall, Roger Staples, } *Auditing Com.*

## Lesson 299.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

EVENING SCENE.

We sat within the farm-house old,
Whose windows, looking o'er the bay,
Gave to the sea-breeze, damp and cold,
An easy entrance, night and day.

Not far away we saw the port,
The strange, old-fashioned, silent town,
The light-house, the dismantled fort,
The wooden houses, quaint and brown.

We sat and talked until the night,
Descending, filled the room;
Our faces faded from the sight —
Our voices only broke the gloom.

LONGFELLOW.

Picture to yourself the group that is sitting "within the farm-house old," and describe it as best you can. Tell what is to be seen in the old-fashioned room where they are sitting. Describe the view from the windows. Tell what the inmates are talking about.

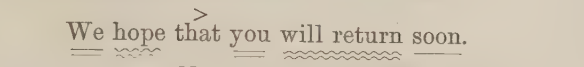
## Lesson 300.

### ANALYSIS. — OBJECTIVE CLAUSES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. We hope that you will return soon. 2. I heard that the vessel was lost at sea. 3. I know that my Redeemer liveth.

4. He said, "I care not for glory." 5. "I do not desire renown," he said. 6. I cannot imagine why he is absent. 7. My cousin's cousin knows where the berries are thickest. 8. Do you know when the train will be due in Boston? 9. "You now see," he remarked, "how this may be done."



## Lesson 301.

### ATTRACTIVENESS.

That style in writing is most attractive in which the language best fits the thought, and most clearly and readily conveys that thought to the reader. All needless effort to understand is a loss.

The most important rule for the young writer who would add attractiveness to his style after it has clearness and force is, —

*Similar parts of a sentence should be similar in form.*

The words, phrases, or clauses which are united by a co-ordinate conjunction should be similar in form.

"The room is large and cheerful" is a much better sentence than "The room is of good size and cheerful." The expression, "The day preceding and the day following," or "The day before and the day after," is better than "The day before and the day following," or "The day preceding and the day after."

Improve these sentences: —

Did he come to you angry or in sorrow?

Heat expands metals, but they are contracted by cold.

Did they go off in a sail-boat or rowing?

He was a man well adapted naturally and by cultivation to occupy the highest position in life.

The happy family lived together in peace and harmoniously.

It is not when fortune smiles that the heart is tried, but at the time she frowns.

The book is well printed, with gilt edges, of clear type, and nicely bound.

Kindness and being forbearing are the means of making and keeping friends.

When the wind fell, how quiet and without ripples the sea became.

He did not seem to be aware how sick he was, or of the dangerousness of such a disease.

Please write me at your early convenience, and hoping to receive a favorable reply, I am yours sincerely.

The heavens declare the glory of God, and we may see his handiwork in the firmament.

## Lesson 302.

### CREDENTIALS.

If the members of an assembly or convention have been elected or appointed to their positions, it is necessary that each should hold some certificate, showing that he is entitled to serve as a member. This certificate is usually called the credentials of the member, and should be prepared by the secretary of the body sending these delegates.

A form for credentials is here given: —

NEWPORT, VT.,
*Nov.* 17, 1890.

TO THE TENTH ANNUAL CONVENTION OF THE
SUNDAY SCHOOLS OF VERMONT:

This certifies that Benjamin Rose has been duly elected a delegate from the Sunday School of the Thomas Street Church of this city to the Tenth Annual Convention of the Sunday Schools of Vermont.

THEODORE YOUNG, *Secretary.*

You are secretary of the Y. M. C. A. Prepare the credentials of the delegates to the state convention.

## Lesson 303.

### DESCRIPTION.

Select any high mountain about which you have read, and write of a journey from its base to its summit. Describe the changes in climate, vegetation, and animal life which you find as you ascend.

Give the route which you would take in going around the world. Mention the principal places at which you would stop, and tell what you would find of special interest in each.

## Lesson 304.

### ANALYSIS. — APPOSITIVE CLAUSES.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. The fact that he was sick prevented his return. 2. The

rumor that the vessel had been lost was very extensively circulated. 3. I had an impression that it could not be done. 4. That old hymn, "I would not live alway," was written by Muhlenburg. 5. The question, "Can he succeed?" is now discussed in the papers. 6. You know the proverb, "Time and tide wait for no man."

## Lesson 305.

### ATTRACTIVENESS.

The rule, *Similar parts of a sentence should be similar in form*, will be more readily understood from the following illustrations: —

"If you are out of debt, you are out of danger," is better than, "If you are out of debt, you are in no danger."

"The deeper the well, the cooler the water," is better than, "The greater the depth of the well, the more cool the water."

Select the forms of expression which you prefer: —

Such studies are imposed as a labor, and not cultivated as a delight.

Such studies are frequently assigned by teachers to their pupils, but not cultivated by them with delight.

Their grandeur could lend so bright an inspiration to fancy, so solemn a dignity to research.

Their grandeur affords an inspiration to fancy, and gives to research a dignity.

As a drop falls into a river, so a human life soon disappears.

As a drop falls into a river, so a human life falls into eternity.

Where life is, there is hope.

Where there is life there is hope.

Improve in style the following sentences: —

They could hear the roar of the waves as they dashed against the rocks or creeping slowly up the beach.

The judge was without partiality, who was logical in thought, of a clear head, and quick in his perceptions.

He decided on renting the farm and, as soon as a good tenant was secured, to go to the city to live.

A wise forethought has led to preliminary steps to secure the selling of the present property and securing a lot in a more desirable location.

He that ruleth his spirit is better than he that succeeds in taking a city.

Reputation is gained by many acts, but one act alone will destroy it.

Men's thoughts are according to their inclinations, their discourse depends upon their opinions, but their actions are modified by their habits.

Pride goeth before destruction, and a fall is preceded by a haughty spirit.

## Lesson 306.

### SYNONYMS.

State the distinction in the meaning between: —

| | |
|---|---|
| misfortune *and* calamity | envy *and* jealousy |
| modesty *and* humility | diligence *and* industry |

Use each of the foregoing words in a sentence.

## Lesson 307.

### CREDENTIALS.

Copy this form for delegates' credentials: —

DELEGATES' CREDENTIALS.

———— *Oct.* 6, 1888.
Voting District No. One.

This is to Certify, That at a meeting of the —— * Electors of this Voting District, held at the Town House in said District on Saturday, Oct. 6, 1888, pursuant to a regular call of the —— * Town Committee, issued under the directions and in conformity with the call of the —— * State Central Committee, the following Delegates were chosen to attend the State Convention, to be held at ———, on Thursday, Oct. 15, 1888, at 11 o'clock A.M., for the purpose of nominating Candidates for General Officers of the State for the year ensuing:

Delegates' Names. { NATHAN D. SHARP,
ANDREW F. HARRIS,
R. O. ROBINSON.

The said delegates were given power to fill all vacancies in their delegation.

Attest:

GEO. B. BENNETT, *Chairman.* HENRY F. GATES, *Secretary.*

You are clerk of the —— caucus; prepare the credentials of the delegates to the city convention of the —— party to nominate candidates for mayor and other officers.

* Democratic, Republican, Prohibition.

## Lesson 308.

### OMISSION OF A PART OF A VERB.

When two or more forms of the same verb are connected by a conjunction, no part of the full tense-forms not belonging to each should be omitted.

If a part of any verb is omitted, we infer that the full form of this verb is the same as that of the other verb or verbs. For example, in the sentence, "What you have done once you can again," the second verb is incomplete, and we naturally supply the past participle of the first verb, making the sentence read, "What you have done once you can done again." The sentence should have been written, "What you have done once you can do again."

Tell what part of the verb has been omitted in each of the following sentences. Write the sentences correctly.

No store either has or can sell this coat at so low a figure.

They have not and do not tell all the facts of the case.

He was brought to the school by some gentleman who had helped his father and now would him.

I always have respected and do now his conscientiousness and liberality, but I never have and never can admire him as a man.

I have and will maintain that he was right.

If you had written when you said you would, we should not have missed seeing each other.

You will break that vase, if you have not already, by your carelessness.

The long walk has made us so hungry that we shall eat as we never have before.

Industry has always been the way to success, and it will, so long as men are what they are.

I am confident that I can do as well as he has.

If you had done as well as you could, I should not find fault.

## Lesson 309.

### RELATION OF CLAUSES.

Tell me not in mournful numbers
  Life is but an empty dream;
For the soul is dead that slumbers,
  And things are not what they seem.

This sentence may be arranged by clauses, and the office of each clause shown thus: —

Tell me not in mournful numbers — Principal clause.
Life is but an empty dream — Noun clause, object of *tell.*
For the soul is dead — Adverbial clause, modifying *tell.*
That slumbers — Adjective clause, modifying *soul.*
And things are not — Adverbial clause, modifying *tell.*
What they seem — Noun clause, attributive complement.

Arrange the following complex sentences so as to show the clauses, and tell what kind of clause each is and its relation to some other word in the sentence: —

Ask yourself what is the leading motive that actuates you while you are at work.

The wise man is happy when he gains the respect of those whom he esteems.

Thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother when thou comest to the land which I will give thee.

I will stay here until you have finished the work which you have undertaken.

I have an uncle who will be seventy years of age when Christmas comes around.

I will remain until the carrier brings me the letter which I expect.

A certain man was setting out on a journey when a friend said to him, "Remember that time and tide wait for no man."

A milkmaid, who was coming from the dairy, was walking along with a can of milk upon her head just as it was growing dark.

An old man who had been listening got up and said, "Such nonsense will defeat its own purpose."

## Lesson 310.

### PUNCTUATION. — PARENTHESES AND BRACKETS.

*The parenthesis may be used to inclose words which break the connection between closely related parts of the sentence, and which are not necessary to the sense.*

The difference between the use of parentheses and of commas to inclose parenthetical expressions is simply one of degree. The parentheses separate the inclosed words more completely from the remainder of the sentence than the commas do.

*Brackets are used to inclose some explanation, addition, or correction.*

Do not interrupt the thought of a sentence by the needless use of parenthetical remarks.

Compare the two following letters, and explain why one is more pleasing than the other: —

I received yours of the 25th ult. (although it did not come to hand until the 6th inst., owing to the recent blockade), and I now take the first opportunity business affords (which is very good of late) of answering it, and which I shall do with as much attention to all your requests as my spare time (which, as I said before, is now very agreeably contracted by the increased business) will permit me, and I think you will find them all fulfilled in about three weeks (or a little later).

Yours of the 25th ult. did not come to hand till the 6th inst., owing to the recent blockade, and this is my first opportunity for answering it. I fear that my time is too limited, because of an increased amount of business, to permit my paying as much attention to your requests as I would like to do; but you may depend upon my attending to all of them within the next three weeks.

## Lesson 311.

### ATTRACTIVENESS.

*Do not use a word in more than one sense in the same sentence.*

Do not say, "He left the main road by a path leading to the left across the field."

Improve these sentences: —

The supply of coffee was not sufficient to supply the army for more than ten days.

"Well," said I, "you have stoned up that well very well."

With a very good will will I be your companion.

It is now your turn to turn the grindstone.

They saw that it had sharp-edged teeth like a saw.

It was thought best to anchor, but in letting down the anchor it caught in some drift-wood.

Handle that basket carefully, for it is filled with eggs and has no handle.

In this case the noun is in the nominative case.

She leaves the leaves of her book dirty.

The present you made her will satisfy her for the present.

I do not like to hear a boy talk like that.

A man of his sense should have a higher sense of duty.

## Lesson 312.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

THE OLD HOME.

Between broad fields of wheat and corn
Is the lowly home where I was born;
The peach tree leans against the wall,
And the woodbine wanders over all.
There is the barn, and, as of yore,
I can smell the hay from the open door,
And see the busy swallows throng,
And hear the peewee's mournful song.
Oh, ye who daily cross the sill,
Step lightly, for I love it still!
And when you crowd the old barn eaves,
Then think what countless harvest sheaves
Have passed within that scented door,
To gladden eyes that are no more.

THOMAS BUCHANAN READ.

Describe the old home and its surroundings, and add something about its former inmates.

## Lesson 313.

### INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

Infinitives are used chiefly as nouns. Participles are used chiefly as adjectives.

An infinitive may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb; as, —

To ride [noun] is more pleasant than to walk [noun].
Time to come [adjective] is called future time.
He came to see [adverb] me.

A participle may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb; as, —

Riding [noun] horseback is pleasant exercise.
The boy, broken [adjective] down with grief, confessed his fault.
Here it comes sparkling [adverb] and there it lies darkling [adverb].

An infinitive with its modifiers and complements is called an infinitive phrase. A participle with its modifiers and complements is called a participial phrase. An infinitive phrase or a participial phrase used as a noun is called a noun phrase.

I left the road to help the poor fellow.

In this sentence what is the infinitive phrase? What does *to help* modify? What is the complement of *to help?*

I saw him cutting the tree with his hatchet.

What is the participial phrase? Which is the participle?

What does it modify? What is its complement? What is its modifier?

They intend to see Palestine.

Which is the infinitive in this sentence? As a noun what is its construction? As a verb how is it modified?

They intend going to Palestine.

Which is the participle in this sentence? As a noun what is its construction? As a verb how is it modified?

After the verbs *bid*, *dare*, *feel*, *hear*, *let*, *make*, and *see*, *to*, the sign of the infinitive, is usually omitted, and the infinitive is used as an adjective modifier of the object of these verbs.

## Lesson 314.

### SYNONYMS.

In what respects do these words agree in meaning? In what respects do they differ?

custom *and* habit
couple *and* two
should *and* ought to
equivocal *and* ambiguous

Use each of these words in a sentence.

## Lesson 315.

### CAUTIONS.

Do not say: —

a quarter of nine *for* a quarter to nine
come and see me *for* come to see me
try and do it *for* try to do it

I am afraid it will rain *for* I fear it will rain
not as I know of *for* not that I know

right here *for* just here
right there *for* just there
long ways off *for* long way off
had have *for* had
gents *for* gentlemen
somewheres *for* somewhere
concern *for* thing
mad *for* angry

## Lesson 316.

### EXTENDED PARAPHRASE.

#### The Homes of England.

The stately homes of England,
How beautiful they stand!
Amidst their tall ancestral trees,
O'er all the pleasant land;
The deer across their greensward bound
Through shade and sunny gleam,
And the swan glides past them with the sound
Of some rejoicing stream.

The cottage homes of England!
By thousands on her plains,
They are smiling o'er the silvery brooks,
And round the hamlet-fanes.
Through glowing orchards forth they peep,
Each from its nook of leaves;
And fearless there the lowly sleep,
As the bird beneath their eaves.

Felicia D. Hemans.

From the hints contained in the first stanza of the poem, describe "the stately homes of England," adding other details to make the description complete. Contrast with them "the cottage homes of England."

## Lesson 317.

### ATTRACTIVENESS.

*Do not repeat the same word or words of similar sound in too close connection.*

Do not say, "They took the liberty to shout for liberty on one occasion, and this was the occasion of a disturbance." Do not say, "The large assembly consisted largely of ladies."

Write in better form the following sentences: —

The master found fault with the faults in the exercise.

In a calm moonlight night the sea is a beautiful object to see.

I was unable to distinguish who was the distinguished guest.

I intend to explain to you the plan intended to be carried out.

The conditions which you name as the condition of your accepting the proposal are too severe.

We shall remain at home during the remainder of the day.

The same character has characterized their descendants in modern times.

He was anxious to have me relieved from all anxiety in the matter.

He favored the undertaking as a favor to his friend.

## Lesson 318.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE.

An infinitive or a participle may be used as the subject of a verb; as, —

To see the sun is pleasant.
Catching trout is fine sport.

As predicate nominative; as, —

To see is to believe.
Seeing is believing.

As the object of a transitive verb; as, —

I like to study.
We enjoy skating.

As the object of a preposition; as, —

We are about to recite.
You are detained for whispering.

In apposition with a noun or pronoun; as, —

It is wrong to steal.

This act, quarrelling with your playmates, will cost you their friendship.

As an adjective; as, —

He showed a praiseworthy ambition to excel.

Having lost his health, he failed in his purpose to succeed.

As an adverb; as, —

I am ready to go.
I read to learn.
He came bounding into the room.

Independently; as, —

To tell the truth, I have not studied as I ought.

Generally speaking, pupils dislike grammar and like composition.

Give the construction of each infinitive and participle in this lesson.

## Lesson 319.

### PUNCTUATION.—THE SEMICOLON.

*The semicolon, instead of the period, may be used between complete sentences, if short and closely connected in thought; as,* —

For, lo, the winter is past, the rain is over and gone; the flowers appear on the earth; the time of the singing of birds is come, and the voice of the turtle is heard in the land.

Grief counts the seconds; happiness forgets the hours.

Complete the punctuation of the following sentences: —

Greek's a harp we love to hear
Latin is a trumpet clear
Spanish like an organ swells
Italian rings its silver bells
France with many a frolic mien
Tunes her sprightly violin
Loud the German rolls his drum
When Russia's clashing cymbals come
But Britain's sons may well rejoice
For English is the human voice.

## Lesson 320.

### ATTRACTIVENESS.

Successive sentences should not all begin in the same way. Vary the sentences by placing the most important word or phrase at the beginning or at the end, by using sometimes the active and sometimes the passive form, or by otherwise changing the construction.

Study the two following paragraphs and show how the first has been changed into the second: —

He had a memory that amazed all about him. He was an accurate observer of men and things. His strength lay rather in a discerning and sound judgment, than in imagination or invention.

His memory, which never failed him, astonished all who knew him. He was an accurate observer of men and things. Discernment and sound judgment were his strong points; his weakness lay in imagination and invention.

Improve the following paragraphs: —

Many men at one time thought it right to live quite alone. They shut themselves out from the pleasures and luxuries of the world. They thought that a very self-denying life.

He was excelled in frankness by none. His benevolence was equally remarkable. He had no affectation whatever. He was distinguished in all his actions by a noble carelessness of public opinion. He was a rare example of humility.

## Lesson 321.

### MODIFYING COMPLEMENT.

An infinitive or a participle may be the modifying complement of a verb [see page 91]; as, —

They made him *run* [caused him to run].
They kept him *waiting*.

Select the direct objects and the modifying complements, and give the construction of each in the following sentences: —

This made him angry.
She baked her bread brown.

I call that good.
The people elected Davis governor.
We chose him chairman.
Let us call her Mary.
We will cause him to repent.
This wind makes me chilly.
God paints the lily white, the violet blue.
He knocked the ball higher than a kite.
She marked her class very high.
The rocking of the boat made him seasick.
We thought him a noble youth.

Use each of the following verbs in a sentence containing a double complement, one direct and one modifying: —

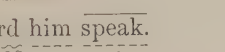
make, elect, name, style, appoint, choose, render.

## Lesson 322.

### ANALYSIS.—INFINITIVES.

Analyze these sentences, and parse the infinitives: —

1. He attends school to learn. 2. He tried to speak. 3. I told them to go. 4. We saw them fall. 5. I am ready to hear. 6. I felt it tremble. 7. They were about to move away. 8. He tried to retreat, but to retreat was impossible. 9. He is supposed to have gone. 10. To study faithfully is to be wise. 11. For one to steal is base. 12. He ordered the horse to be saddled. 13. Let him sit alone. 14. He was anxious to learn to sing. 15. He did not know which way to turn. 16. He knew when he ought to go. 17. He has enough to eat. 18. I knew him to be a brave man.



## Lesson 323.

### PETITIONS.

A petition is not dated. It should begin with the name of the body to which it is addressed, and should next state by whom — what class of persons — it is signed. The customary formula of conclusion is seen in the petition which follows: —

To the Honorable the City Council of the City of Kalamazoo, —

The undersigned, property-owners and residents of the city of Kalamazoo, respectfully represent to your honorable body that Elm Street is in a poor condition, inadequate to the present traffic and dangerous to public travel.

It is the desire of your petitioners that the said street may be made wider than at present, straightened at several points, and established as an avenue of not less than eighty (80) feet. It is an improvement believed to be of great benefit to the public weal, and of vital interest to a large constituency of taxpayers.

Your petitioners, therefore, most respectfully request that a committee be appointed to make inquiry, to ascertain and determine the expediency of the aforesaid improvements.

In accordance with which your petitioners will ever pray.

## Lesson 324.

### SYNONYMS.

In what respects do these words agree in meaning? In what respects do they differ?

to hear *and* to listen
to avenge *and* to revenge
to quit *and* to leave
to murder *and* to assassinate

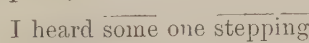
Illustrate by appropriate use in sentences.

## Lesson 325.

### ANALYSIS. — PARTICIPLES.

Analyze the following sentences, and parse the participles: —

1. I heard some one stepping slowly along the walk. 2. We saw the celebrated trotting-horse walking over the ground. 3. We saw a tired soldier sitting by the wayside eating his dinner. 4. The farmer had three sheep killed by the dogs. 5. He still lives, loved and respected by all. 6. Having finished his business, he departed forthwith. 7. They attempted one foolish thing, walking backward with their eyes closed. 8. He was known without being seen. 9. He cannot walk far without fatiguing himself. 10. She cannot work long without becoming tired. 11. Whistling a lively tune, he left us. 12. I did not know of his being sick. 13. I did not hear of his ever having been a soldier. 14. Having been disappointed in regard to his plans, he became melancholy.




## Lesson 326.

### PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following, arranging it in its proper form as poetry, and punctuating it correctly: —

### Abou Ben Adhem.

Abou Ben Adhem may his tribe increase awoke one night from a deep dream of peace and saw within the moonlight of his room making it rich and like a lily in bloom an angel writing in a book of gold exceeding peace had made Ben Adhem bold and to the presence in the room he said what writest thou the vision raised its head and with a look made of all sweet accord answered the names of those who love the Lord and is mine one asked Abou nay not so replied the angel Abou spake more low but cheerly still and said I pray thee then write me as one that loves his fellow men the angel wrote and vanished the next night it came again with a great wakening light and showed the names whom love of God had blest and lo Ben Adhems name led all the rest.

Leigh Hunt.

## Lesson 327.

### SIMPLICITY.

Copy this selection, and substitute short and simple words for those in italics: —

*Assuredly,* there is much *felicity* in *satiating* one's *inclination* for a *beverage* in the *unsullied* water of a *rivulet.* *Magnificent* water! *oscillating* in the hail-storm, *capering, effervescing, flaunting* in the cataract. *Contemplate* it as it *percolates* down the mountain-side! *Regard* it in the hoar-frost, so *lucent,* as it is *irradiated* by the sun! *Resplendent* water! *undulating* up the valley, in the cloud-mist, or *fabricating* the rainbow.

Why is the paragraph which you have written much more pleasing than this one?

## Lesson 328.

### RESOLUTIONS.—PETITIONS.

As secretary of a Tailors' Early Closing Association, prepare a resolution relating to the time of closing the tailor shops of the city, and a notice of this action for the city papers.

Draw up, ready for signature, a petition to the City Council for an improvement in the manner of lighting the city.

Prepare a petition to be sent to the legislature, asking that a more stringent truant law be passed.

## Lesson 329.

### PUNCTUATION.—COLON AND DASH.

The colon indicates that, though the sentence may be grammatically complete, there is something following which must be joined in thought with what precedes.

The dash denotes that what follows is in contrast with what precedes; the colon, that what follows is in harmony with what precedes.

*A colon should be placed before a long quotation, a letter, a speech, an argument, or a list of particulars when formally introduced. If the colon comes at the end of a paragraph, it may be followed by a dash.*

Select from this book, or elsewhere, several illustrations of each portion of the preceding rule.

## Lesson 330.

### STORY TO BE IMITATED.

THE BRAVE HUNTER.

A hunter once who courage lacked,
In the hill forests dense his game had tracked;
A woodman near a tall fir met his view,
Whom by the nymphs he prayed, if aught he knew,
To point the wild beast's steps that harbored near:
The other said, "Good luck has brought you here!
The lion's self to you I'll quickly show."
Pale and with chattering cheek, he cried, "No, no!
Pray don't oblige me, friend, beyond your task!
To see the lion's track, not him, I ask."

Write a story or a fable which shall illustrate the thought of this stanza.

## Lesson 331.

### REMONSTRANCE. — ANNOUNCEMENT.

Prepare a remonstrance against, or a petition in favor of, a bill before the legislature requiring cities and towns to furnish text-books free to pupils.

As secretary of a lecture association, write an announcement of a lecture.

Prepare a short report of the lecture for the morning papers.

## Lesson 332.

### ABRIDGMENT.

A complex sentence is said to be abridged when it is reduced to a simple sentence. This may be done by omitting the connective and changing the verb of the subordinate clause into an infinitive or a participle, or by substituting for the subordinate clause a prepositional phrase or some word equivalent.

If the subject of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the principal clause, it is omitted when the clause is abridged; otherwise, it is retained.

Tell what changes are made in each abridgment which follows: —

1. When one's courage is gone, his efforts amount to little.
2. One's courage being gone, his efforts amount to little.

In the abridged sentence, *when*, the connective of the first sentence, a conjunctive adverb, is omitted, and *is gone*, the verb in the subordinate clause, is changed into the participle *being gone*.

1. When spring returns, the farmer goes forth to the field.
2. Spring returning, the farmer goes forth to the field.

1. He departed when I arrived.
2. He departed on my arrival.

1. While we were standing on the platform we needed no testimony as to the velocity of the cars.
2. Standing on the platform, we needed no testimony as to the velocity of the cars.

1. He desired that I should accompany him.
2. He desired me to accompany him.

1. I was not sure that it was he.
2. I was not sure of its being he.

## Lesson 333.

### AMBIGUOUS USE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

There should be no doubt as to the antecedent of a relative pronoun.

*The proper position of a relative clause is next to the noun which it modifies.*

In the following sentences the relative pronouns are used ambiguously. Write the sentences correctly.

They came across a fertile spot in the Desert of Sahara which is called an oasis.

The United States bought Alaska of Russia which is situated in the north-west corner of North America.

Hawthorne was a classmate of Longfellow at Bowdoin College who was three years his senior.

Vesuvius is not far from Naples from which black clouds of vapor are always rising.

There was once a little girl named Amy who with her pets lived in Scotland, which consisted of two rabbits, a lamb, and some goldfish.

He brought a friend into disgrace that had long been his companion.

The river Nile flows through Egypt which is one of the longest in the world.

Great Britain is only a little larger than the state of Minnesota in which more than half as many people live as there are in all the United States.

Mineral oil is pumped from wells in the country north of Pittsburg which is in Pennsylvania from which kerosene is made.

The poor man had a devoted sister who had no brother upon whom to call for assistance who gave him all her earnings.

The proprietor at once dismissed his clerk who was not in the habit of being so hasty without making definite inquiries into the matter.

Fine hairs often cover the bodies of insects which are very thick in proportion to the size of the creature.

He needs a teacher who cannot read.

He went around by the barn instead of going by the house which would have been much shorter.

## Lesson 334.

### SYNONYMS.

The words *believe*, *calculate*, *expect*, *guess*, *imagine*, *judge*, *consider*, and *suppose* all imply that action of the mind which is called thought. Each means *to think*, and has, besides, some additional meaning.

*To believe* means to regard or accept as true.

*To calculate* means to reckon in order to obtain a result or conclusion, and should not be used instead of *to intend* or *to purpose*.

*To expect* means to look forward to in thought, and has always reference to some coming event. It should never be used in reference to a present or past event.

*To guess* means to attempt to hit upon at random.
*To imagine* means to form in the mind an idea of.
*To judge* means to form an opinion about.
*To consider* means to think carefully and deliberately.
*To suppose* is to assume to be true.

Find the exact meaning of these words in the dictionary, and use each in two sentences. Whenever using one of these words, be careful to consider whether it is exactly the right word to express your thought.

## Lesson 335.

### CONSTRUCTION IN ABRIDGED PHRASES.

When an adverbial clause is abridged to a phrase containing a noun or pronoun with a participle, the noun or pronoun is said to be in the nominative case absolute, and is modified by the participle used as an adjective.

As the disease was spreading, great alarm was felt.

The dependent clause of this sentence may be shortened to a phrase containing a noun and a participle; thus, —

The disease spreading, great alarm was felt.

The noun *disease* in the phrase is said to be in the nominative case absolute, and is modified by the participle *spreading*, used as an adjective.

Abridge the following sentences. State the changes that take place in the abridgment, and give the construction of the noun and the participle in the abridged phrase: —

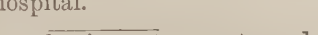
As the teacher was ill, there was no session of school.
Since this lesson is poorly learned, you must study it again.

## Lesson 336.

### ANALYSIS. — NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE.

Analyze the following sentences. Parse the participles and the nouns: —

1. The sun having set, we returned. 2. The chair being broken, we removed it. 3. The storm ceasing, we again started. 4. The anchor having been lost, our vessel drifted upon the rocks. 5. The man having become an invalid, they carried him to the hospital.




## Lesson 337.

### ORDER OF PHRASES AND CLAUSES.

*The order of clauses should show their grammatical connection.*

You may go now if it has stopped raining, and you will enjoy the walk.

This sentence may mean, "If it has stopped raining you may go and you will enjoy the walk," or "If it has stopped raining and if you will enjoy the walk, you may go."

Improve the following sentences: —

The time spent in reading that book is wasted, if you do not comprehend the lesson that should be drawn, and you are no better for having read it.

The sun shone forth brightly, as if it had never hidden behind a cloud, and changed entirely the appearance of the scene.

Your friend told me that he had not heard the rumor and spoke the truth.

The jury decided that the man was guilty and was then dismissed.

## Lesson 338.

### CONSTRUCTION IN ABRIDGED PHRASES.

When a dependent clause is abridged to a phrase, the participle is sometimes the principal element of the phrase. The participle has then the construction of a noun, and the word which was the subject in the dependent clause is put in the possessive case limiting it.

I was not aware that he was in the room.

The dependent clause of this sentence may be shortened; thus, —

I was not aware of his being in the room.

In this phrase the participle *being* has the construction of a noun, object of the preposition *of*. The subject of the dependent clause *he* becomes a possessive pronoun, depending upon *being*.

Give the construction of the pronouns and participles in these sentences: —

His being defeated caused great surprise.
Its being true made the accusation more painful.

A dependent clause is sometimes abridged by changing its verb to an infinitive. The subject of the clause then

becomes the subject of the infinitive and is in the objective case.

In all cases of abridgment the complement retains with the participle or infinitive the same case that it had with the verb of the dependent clause, except that when an infinitive is used in the abridgment the predicate noun is in the objective case to agree with the subject. This is in accordance with the principle that "an intransitive or passive verb requires the same case after it as before it when both words refer to the same person or thing."

## Lesson 339.

### AMBIGUITY WITH PARTICIPLES.

While the use of the participle secures brevity, it often leads to ambiguity; for it is sometimes difficult to determine what noun or pronoun the participle modifies. In case of ambiguity from the use of a participle, change the participle to a finite verb and supply a subject, or change the position of the participle.

Improve the following sentences: —

John at once answered the note received from his friend, urging him to come to see him. [Who was urging? Write in two ways.]

As I came up in the street-car, I saw a dead horse passing Ninth Street.

I did not see you enter studying so diligently.

This I could not tell you, making so short a call. [Write in two ways.]

The crowd contained the usual number of babies and baby-carriages, crying or sleeping.

The wheels said to the horse, "It is we that ought to complain rather than you, having all the weight of the wagon to support."

Being badly injured, I took him up tenderly and sent for a carriage.

Struck with terror, the boat was launched at once.

Alarmed at the news, a messenger was despatched to the queen.

Hoping all things, believing all things, and fearing nothing, the ship left the harbor with the noble emigrants on board.

After partaking of a hearty breakfast, the balloon was brought into town amid the cheers and congratulations of the inhabitants.

Being comfortably seated in the cars, our journey was very pleasant.

## Lesson 340.

### INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS.

The elements which have a place within the sentence, but yet are not a part of it because they are neither principal elements, modifying elements, nor connectives, are called independent elements.

The independent elements are: —

1. The interjection.

2. Words used in exclamations like interjections; as, Oh, my eyes!

3. Nouns used to name the subject of a sentence and followed by a pronoun which is the real subject; as, The Pilgrim Fathers, where are they?

4. The noun or pronoun denoting the person addressed; as, Harold, come here.

5. The noun or pronoun used absolutely with a participle; as, The weather being stormy, there was no session of school.

6. Responsives, *i.e.* words used like *yes* and *no* in answer to questions.

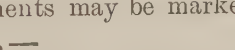
7. Adverbs used as introductory words; as, There came a voice to him.

8. Adverbs and adverbial phrases modifying the sentence rather than any particular word of the sentence; as, To speak candidly, I was in fault.

Analyze the following sentences: —

1. Oh, I am so glad of it! 2. Alas, they are all gone! 3. Halloo! where are you going now? 4. James, bring me the hammer. 5. William, where have you been? 6. Fame! I care not for fame. 7. There is not a star to be seen. 8. Proud city of the waters, thou art doomed.

Independent elements may be marked by placing an X beneath them; thus, —




## Lesson 341.

### A COMPARISON OF STYLE. — UNITY.

Compare the two following notes, and explain why one is better than the other: —

I intend to go to the country next week, but I shall do the errands for you before I go, though some of them may be

troublesome, as you say, but with Jane's help I am sure I can accomplish them all, although the most difficult of all will be to match that silk which is of a very peculiar shade, and I will send the packages to you by express as soon as possible.

I intend to go to the country next week, but I shall do those errands for you before I go. Some of them may be troublesome, as you say, but with Jane's help I am sure I can accomplish them all. The most difficult of all will be to match that silk, which is of a very peculiar shade. I will send the packages to you by express as soon as possible.

A sentence should present to the mind but one thought and those modifications of that thought which unite to make it complete. Thoughts having little connection, thoughts that do not unite to create one mental picture, should not be presented in the same sentence.

Improve the sentences below. This can be done by making as many sentences as there are complete thoughts.

After we reached the station the conductor assisted me to the platform where I found my friends who had come to see me as the news of my coming had preceded me. [After we reached the station the conductor assisted me to the platform. There I found my friends who had come to see me, as the news of my coming had preceded me.]

Their march was through an uncultivated country, whose savage inhabitants fared badly, having no other riches than a breed of lean sheep, whose flesh was rank and unsavory by reason of their continual feeding upon sea-fish.

Neither is any condition of life more honorable in the sight of God than another, otherwise He would be a respecter of persons, which He assures us He is not.

For, notwithstanding his having gone in winter to Moscow,

where he found the cold excessive, which confined him without intermission six weeks to his room, we could not induce him to return home.

Men who have looked at the different kinds of rocks and have studied the work of the sea, the tides, and the waves, have tried to make a science of it all, and this science they call Geology, which is a delightful and most instructive study.

Christopher Columbus, old and very poor, died at Valladolid in 1506, which was thirteen years after the discovery of San Salvador, where thousands of the Indians had been killed by the cruel Spaniards, who desired to satisfy their selfish greed for gold.

## Lesson 342.

### PUNCTUATION. — INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS.

*Set off by commas independent elements, unless the exclamation point is required instead.*

Complete the punctuation of the following sentences: —

His father being dead the prince succeeded to the throne.

Peace of mind being secured we may smile at misfortune.

To speak candidly I do not understand the subject.

The fault dear Brutus is not in our stars.

Thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.

The prophets do they live forever?

Generally speaking the education of the common people is advancing rapidly in the United States.

Beautiful yes but it will not last long.

How lucky you are to be sure!

Well I will try to help you.

What then is the happiest time of life?

Plato thou reasonest well.

We being exceedingly tossed they lightened the ship.

This is to say nothing worse reprehensible.

Then came Jesus the door being shut and stood in the midst.

Speaking in round numbers he made fifty thousand dollars.

There are to confess the truth few who are fully qualified to govern their fellows.

*An exclamation point must be used after independent elements which express strong emotion, after all interjections except O, and after all exclamatory phrases.*

NOTE. — When an interjection is closely connected with the words which follow, the exclamation point is usually placed at the end of the sentence.

## Lesson 343.

### ESSAY. — THE UNITED STATES.

1. What is its position?
2. What is its extent?
3. What is its population?
4. What classes and nationalities are included in its population?
5. Describe some of its natural features.
6. What are its chief productions?
7. What are its chief towns?
8. What is its government?
9. In what way is it superior to other countries?

# INDEX.

THE FIGURES REFER TO THE PAGES.


**Abbreviations**, 17, 21.

**Abridgment**, 283; construction in abridged phrases, 286, 288.

**Abstract** nouns, 52.

**Adjective**, 15; descriptive and limiting, 16; predicate, 16, 42, 50; numeral, cardinal, and ordinal, 16; comparison of, 18, 20; interrogative, 89; position of, 128; emphatic predicate, 161; emphatic, 166; distinction between adverbs and, 191; figurative use of, 225.

**Adjective** pronouns, 206.

**Adverbial** objective, 88.

**Adverbs**: definition, 22; comparison of, 22; interrogative, 89; position of, 141; distinction between adjectives and, 191.

**Advertisements**, 84, 92.

**Ambiguity**, 124; with personal pronouns, 137; with relative pronouns, 284; with participles, 289.

**Amendments**, 200.

**Analysis**: subject and predicate, 43; adjective element, 46; complements, 49; appositive, 71; possessive case, 74; objective elements, 78; adverbial element, 81; indirect object, 83; adverbial object, 88; adjective phrases, 94; adverbial phrases, 99; possessive pronouns, 207; co-ordinate conjunctions, 218; compound sentences, 234; adjective clauses, 241; adverbial clauses, 248; nominative clauses, 255; objective clauses, 258; appositive clauses, 261; infinitives, 277; participles, 279; nominative absolute, 287; independent elements, 291.

**Antecedent**, 11, 210, 213.

**Apostrophe**, 18, 72.

**Apposition**, 69; punctuation of, 70; analysis of, 71.

**Article**, definite and indefinite, 16.

**Attractiveness** of style, 259, 262, 268, 273, 275.

**Auxiliary** verbs, 140; conjugation of, 140, 146, 148, 157.

Balanced sentences, 246.
Bills, 122.
Book review, 244.
Brackets, 267.
Brevity, 180, 184, 189.
Brief biography, 18, 22, 27.
Business forms: bills, 122; receipts, 134, 138; checks, 143; indorsement of checks, 147; promissory notes, 155; orders, 164; drafts, 168; various forms, 175, 181.
Business letters, 50, 55, 58.

Capital letters, use of, 4, 8, 10, 25, 30.
Cardinal adjectives, 16.
Case: definition, 67; nominative, 67; exercise, 79; appositive, 69; analysis of appositive, 71; possessive, 72; analysis of possessive, 74; objective, 77, 85; analysis of objective, 78; analysis of adverbial objective, 88; nominative absolute, 286; analysis of nominative absolute, 287.
Cautions, 27, 38, 54, 86, 150, 224, 271.
Checks, 143; indorsement of, 147.
Clauses, 24, 28, 216; principal and subordinate, 216; adjective, 237; restrictive or explanatory, 239; analysis of adjective, 241; analysis of adverbial, 248; noun, 253; analysis of nominative, 255; analysis of objective, 258; analysis of appositive, 261; relation of, 266; order of, 287.
Climax, 251.
Collective nouns, 52, 129.
Colon, 10, 57, 242, 251, 281.
Comma, 10, 23, 34, 46, 53, 57, 70, 104, 106, 121, 240, 242, 247, 254, 293.
Comparison, 18; irregular, 20; of adverbs, 22.
Complement and modifier, distinction between, 48.
Complements, 41, 45; objective, 42; analysis of, 50; modifying, 91, 276
Compound words, 37.
Conjugation, 140; shall and will, 140; may, 146; have, 148; write, 152; do, 155; be, 157; review of, 177, 179, 181.
Conjunctions, 32; co-ordinate and subordinate, 217; analysis of co-ordinate, 218; correlative, 222, 224; placed before the same part of speech, 225.
Connectives, 33, 216.
Constitution and by-laws, 194.

**Contractions**, 18.
**Contrast**, 233.
**Co-ordinate elements**, 216.
**Copy** of record, 250.
**Correlatives**, 222, 224, 225.
**Credentials**, 260, 264.

**Dash**, 10, 133, 281.
**Declension**, 103; of personal pronouns, 103; of relative and interrogative, 205.
**Defective verbs**, 125.
**Description**, 6, 11, 12, 40, 47, 51, 58, 65, 68, 72, 78, 82, 87, 95, 98, 102, 105, 116, 122, 126, 132, 138, 146, 148, 205, 219, 227, 251, 261; contrasted, 150, 159, 164, 169, 177, 185, 191, 196.
**Descriptive adjective**, 16.
**Dialogue**, 166, 215.
**Diminutives, two**, 86.
**Direct and indirect objects**, 82; analysis of, 83.
**Direct and modifying complements**, 91.
**Drafts**, 168.

**Either and or**, 224.
**Elements** of a sentence, 43; analysis of adverbial, 81; co-ordinate and subordinate, 216; independent, 290; punctuation of independent, 293.
**Emphasis**, order of, 153; of subject, 158; of adjective, 161, 166; of object, 170; of adverbial elements, 276.
**Emphatic form** of verbs, 165.
**Essays**, 111, 139, 156, 175, 182, 190 200, 210, 214, 231, 236, 294.
**Etiquette**: good manners, 61, 65; manners at table, 76; at school, 90; on the street, 100; at a party, 123; when visiting, 144.
**Exaggeration**, 114.
**Exclamation point**, 4, 36, 57, 293, 294.

**Figurative and commonplace statement**, 241.
**Figures** of speech, 208, 212, 215, 216, 220, 229, 225, 241, 244.
**Formal notes**, 31, 35, 45, 47.

**Gender**: definition, 63; ways of indicating, 66; exercise, 79.

**Hyphen**, 36.

Imperative, 109, 160.
Independent elements, 290; punctuation of, 293.
Indicative, 108, 160, 162.
Infinitives: definition, 135; tenses of, 255; general use, 270; phrase, 270; sign omitted, 271; construction of, 273, 276; analysis of, 277.
Initial letters, 17.
Interjections, 35.
Interrogation point, 4, 57.
Interrogative adjective, 89; pronoun, 89, 204; adverb, 89; order of words, 89; form of verb, 165.
Intransitive verbs, 47.
Introductory words, 92, 253.
Irregular verbs, 118.
Italics, 23.

Letters: forms of, 8, 14; formal notes, 31, 35, 44, 46; business, 50, 55, 58; miscellaneous, 59, 72; of introduction, 64; of recommendation, 67.
Like and as, distinction in use, 224.
Limiting adjective, 16.
Loose sentences, 246.

Margins, 3.
Marks of correction, 29.
Marks of punctuation: capital letters, 4, 10, 25, 30; interrogation point, 4; exclamation point, 4, 36; period, 4, 5, 10; dash, 5, 281; comma, 10, 23, 33, 45, 53, 57, 104, 110, 121, 235, 239, 242, 247, 254, 293; quotation marks, 23, 24; colon, 23, 281; hyphen, 36; semicolon, 235, 242, 251, 275; parenthesis, 267.
Metaphor, 216, 220, 229; faded, 225; mixed, 244.
Mode, 108; tenses of, 160; notes on, 162.
Modifiers, 13, 25; position of, 127, 132, 141.
Modifying complement, 91, 276.

Narration, 105, 109.
Natural order of words, 80, 84.
Negative form of verbs, 167.
Negatives, two, 86.
Neither and nor, 224.
Newspaper articles, 96, 100, 104.

**Nominative absolute**, 286, 287.
**Nominative case**, 67.
**Notice of reference**, 209.
**Nouns**: definition, 7; classes of, 7, 52; common, 7; proper, 8; predicate, 42, 50; used as object, 42; abstract, 52; verbal, 52; collective, 52; number of, 56; rules for plural of, 56, 58, 60; gender of, 63; ways of indicating gender of, 66; case of, 67, 69, 72, 77, 79, 82; adverbial use of, 87; used as modifying complements, 91, 276; person of, 97; declension of, 103.
**Number**, 56; rules for formation of plural, 56, 58, 60.
**Numeral adjective**, 16.

**O and oh**, 36.
**Objective case**, 77, 78, 85.
**Objective complement**, 42.
**Orders**, 164.
**Ordinal adjectives**, 16.

**Paragraph**, 3.
**Paraphrase**, 144, 178; extended, 186, 195, 206, 228, 258, 269, 272.
**Parentheses**, 267.
**Parsing**: definition, 43; of verbs, 187.
**Participle**: definition, 135; general use, 270; phrase, 270; construction, 273, 276; analysis, 279; ambiguous use of, 289.
**Particular terms**, 203.
**Parts of speech**, 36.
**Passive form of verbs**, 169.
**Period**, 4, 5, 10, 17, 57, 257.
**Periodic sentences**, 246.
**Person**, 97.
**Personal pronouns**, 97; declension of, 103; compound, 101; ambiguous use of, 137.
**Petitions**, 278, 281.
**Phrase**: verb, 13; definition, 25; analysis of adjective, 94; analysis of adverbial, 99; explanatory or restrictive, 239; infinitive and participial, 270; construction in abridged, 286, 288; order of, 287.
**Plural**, 56, 57, 58, 60, 129.
**Position of adjectives**, 128; of modifiers, 127, 132; of adverbs, 141; of relative clause, 284; of phrases and clauses, 287.
**Possessive adjective pronouns**, 207.

**Possessive** case, 72, 74.
**Postscript**, 10.
**Potential**, 108, 160.
**Preamble**, 221.
**Predicate** adjective, 16.
**Predicate**, simple, 13, 43; modified, 13.
**Prepositions**, 28, 33; superfluous, 150.
**Principal** parts of verbs, 115, 116.
**Progressive** form of verbs, 169.
**Promissory** notes, 155.
**Pronouns**: definition, 11; antecedents of, 11; interrogative, 89, 204; common error in case of, 93; personal, 97; person, number, and gender of, 97; compound personal, 101; declension of personal, 103; ambiguous use of personal, 137; relative, 196; who, which, and what, 198; compound relative, 201; declension of relative, 205; declension of interrogative, 205; adjective, 206: possessive adjective, 207; possessive, 207; agreement with antecedent, 210, 213; ambiguous use of relative, 284.
**Punctuation**: important rules, 4; dash, 5, 133, 281; quotations, 23; series, 33; address, 45; exercise, 48; words omitted, 53; words in pairs, 57; nouns in apposition, 70; parenthetical expressions, 104, 110, 267; words in contrast, 106; words in same construction, 121; as, etc., in examples, 235; adjective phrase and clause, 239; enumeration of particulars, 242, 251; adverbial elements, 247; noun clauses, 254; parentheses and brackets, 267; the semicolon in place of period, 275; review, 279; colon and dash, 281; independent elements, 293.

**Quotation**, definition and rules for punctuation, 23; direct and indirect, 131.

**Rambling** sentences, 39.
**Receipts**, 134, 138.
**Redundant** verbs, 125.
**Regular** and irregular verbs, 115, 118.
**Relation** of clauses, 266.
**Relative** pronouns, 197; compound, 201, 205.
**Report** of committee, 211, 218.
**Reproductions**, 102, 107, 111, 128, 171.
**Resolutions**, 221, 228, 232, 281.

**Rhetoric**: rambling sentences, 39; natural order of words, 80, 84; introductory words, 92; style, 114; exaggeration, 114; comparison of style, 118, 193, 237, 291; ambiguity, 124; position of noun modifiers, 127, 132; direct and indirect quotation, 131; ambiguous use of personal pronouns, 137; position of adverbs, 141; order of emphasis, 153; subject emphatic, 158; predicate adjective emphatic, 161; adjective emphatic, 165; adverbial elements emphatic, 176; brevity, 180, 184, 189; clearness, 199; particular terms, 203; the simile, 208, 212, 229; figures of speech, 215; the metaphor, 220, 225, 229, 244; figurative use of adjectives, 225; faded metaphors, 225; contrast, 233; use of figurative language, 241; mixed metaphors, 244; the present tense, 249; climax, 251; attractiveness, 259, 262, 268, 272, 275; simplicity, 280; ambiguous use of relative pronouns, 284; ambiguity with participles, 289; unity, 291.

**Secretarial** writings, etc.: duties of secretary, 183; records of secretary, 187, 191; constitution and by-laws, 194; amendments, 200; notices, appointments, and reference, 202; notice of reference, 209; reports of committees, 211, 218; preamble, 221, 228; resolutions, 221, 228, 232, 281; copy of record, 250; treasurer's report, 256; credentials, 260, 264; petitions, 278, 281; remonstrance and announcement, 282; notices of meeting, 245.

**Semicolon**, 235, 242, 275.

**Sentence**: definition, 1; subject of, 1, 13, 44; kinds, 2; predicate of, 2, 13; declarative, 3; interrogative, 3; imperative, 3; exclamatory, 3; order of, 89; simple, complex, and compound, 230; periodic, loose, and balanced, 246.

**Shall and will**, distinction of, 172.

**Simile**, 208, 212, 229.

**Simplicity**, 280.

**Singular**, 56, 129.

**Story** to be imitated, 113, 127, 136, 160, 245, 282.

**Style**, 114; comparison of, 118, 193, 227, 237, 291.

**Subject**, simple, 13, 43; modified, 13; compound, 130.

**Subjunctive**, 108, 160, 162.

**Subordinate** elements, 216.

**Such and so**, distinction in use of, 224.

**Synonyms**, 34, 46, 57, 79, 99, 116, 125, 147, 190, 213, 232, 249, 263, 271, 278, 285.

Telegrams, 75, 82.
Tense, 109, 160.
That, use of, 198.
Transitive verbs, 47.
Treasurer's report, 256.

Verbal nouns, 52.
Verbs: definition, 12; phrase, 13; complements of, 41, 45; complete and incomplete, 42, 45; transitive and intransitive, 47; voice of, 105, 109; mode of, 108, 162; tense of, 109; person of, 112; number of, 112, 129, 213; principal parts of, 115; regular, 115; irregular, 118; redundant and defective, 125; infinitives and participles of, 135; conjugation of, 140, 146, 148, 152, 155, 157; auxiliary, 140; emphatic and interrogative forms of, 165; negative forms of, 167; progressive and passive forms of, 169; review of conjugation of, 177, 179, 181; parsing of, 187; agreement with subject, 253; omission of part of, 265.
Voice, 105.

Who, which, and what, distinction of, 198.

Yes and no, 57.

ADVERTISEMENTS.

# WENTWORTH'S ARITHMETICS.

Adopted for exclusive use in the State of Washington, and in countless cities, towns, and schools.

MASTERY: their motto.

LEARN TO DO BY DOING: their method.

PRACTICAL ARITHMETICIANS: the result.

## WENTWORTH'S PRIMARY ARITHMETIC.

By G. A. WENTWORTH, Professor of Mathematics in Phillips Exeter Academy, and Miss E. M. REED, Principal of the Training School, Springfield, Mass. Profusely illustrated. Introduction price, 30 cents; allowance for old book in exchange, 10 cents.

In a word, this book — the fruit of the most intelligent and painstaking study, long-continued — is believed to represent the best known methods of presenting numbers to primarians, and to present these methods in the most available form. It is commended as profoundly philosophical in method, simple and ingenious in development, rich and varied in matter, attractive in style, and practical in effect.

It has been carefully and critically examined by myself and my teachers, and in our estimation it stands ahead of anything else of the kind that we have found. — PRINCIPAL CAMPBELL, *State Normal School, Johnson, Vt.*

## WENTWORTH'S GRAMMAR SCHOOL ARITHMETIC.

Illustrated. Introductory price, 65 cents; allowance, 20 cents. Answers free on teachers' orders.

Intended to follow the Primary Arithmetic and make with that a two-book series for common schools. It is designed to give pupils of the grammar school age an intelligent knowledge of the subject and a moderate power of independent thought, by training them to solve problems by neat and intelligent methods and keeping them free from set rules and formulas. It is characterized by accuracy, thoroughness, good sense, school-room tact, and practical ingenuity.

Eminently practical, well graded, and well arranged. . . . I consider it the brightest, most attractive, most scholarly text-book on this subject that has been issued for years. — PRINCIPAL SERVISS, *Amsterdam, N.Y.*

In a word, these books represent **the Best Methods, made feasible, with the Best Problems,**—ingenious, varied, practical, and abundant.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

BOSTON, NEW YORK, CHICAGO, AND LONDON.

# OPEN SESAME!

## About One Thousand Pieces of the Choicest Prose and Verse.

*COMPILED BY*

BLANCHE WILDER BELLAMY AND MAUD WILDER GOODWIN.

**VOL. I. for children from four to ten years old.**

**VOL. II. for children from ten to fourteen years old.**

**VOL. III. for children of a larger growth.**

*Illustrated, and handsomely bound in cloth. Price of each to teachers, and for introduction, 75 cents.*

---

No Eastern romancer ever dreamed of such a treasure-house as our English literature.

With this "Open Sesame" in his possession a boy or girl has only to enter and make its wealth his own.

Every piece is believed to be worth carrying away in the memory.

The best writings of our classic authors are here, with selections from recent literature and not a few translations.

It is very good indeed. We think it the best of all the collections. — E. A. SHELDON, *Prin. State Normal School, Oswego, N.Y.*

I think it by far the best collection of memory pieces I have ever seen. — F. B. PALMER, *Prin. State Normal School, Fredonia, N.Y.*

It is a beauty, and of all similar works I have seen, it has the most desirable selections. — W. E. BUCK, *Supt. Public Schools, Manchester, N.H.*

The book is a handsome specimen of the arts of typography and binding, while the selections and their arrangement speak well for the judgment and taste of the editors. — CHAS. W. COLE, *Supt. Public Schools, Albany, N.Y.*

It [Volume I.] is a rare and rich collection of poems and a few prose articles. — INTER-OCEAN, *Chicago.*

The whole book is full to overflowing of the best things to be found in the English language, and is a thoroughly happy production which children, parents, and teachers will welcome eagerly. — EDUCATION, *Boston.*

It is not often that a collection of verse so thoroughly representative of what is best in literature, and so inclusive of what one has learned to love and to look for in every anthology, comes from the press. — CHRISTIAN UNION, *New York.*

The editors have brought to their task a sufficiently wide and sympathetic knowledge of English and American verse, and have also wisely considered the real needs and tastes of children. . . . The collection is at once of a high character and of a practicable sort. — SUNDAY SCHOOL TIMES, *Philadelphia.*

---

## GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

BOSTON, NEW YORK, CHICAGO, AND LONDON.

BOOKS FULL OF LIFE AND THOUGHT

WENTWORTH'S ARITHMETICS

Their motto is mastery, their method is learn to do by doing

MONTGOMERY'S AMERICAN HISTORY

A panorama of the leading facts their causes and their results

STICKNEY'S READERS

Best in idea and plan best in matter and make best in interest and results

CLASSICS FOR CHILDREN

Choice literature, judicious notes, large type, firm binding, low prices

STICKNEY'S WORD BY WORD

An improved spelling course in two numbers. conservative and original

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ENGLISH

Bright, practical and interesting at every stage of the course

TARBELL'S LESSONS IN LANGUAGE

Expression through written forms made as natural as thought and speech

THE NEW NATIONAL MUSIC COURSE

Studied by more pupils than e[illegible]her regular courses together

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS